

**Beginner** Student's Book + Workbook  
with key

# New Headway Plus

John and Liz Soars

New Headway English Course is a development of the highly successful multi-level Headway series. The original coursebooks have been rewritten to include new features, activities, and above all, new material to make the learning of English stimulating and motivating for both adult and young adult learners. The course combines the best of traditional

New Headway English Course is a development of the highly successful multi-level Headway series. The original coursebooks have been rewritten to include new features, activities, and above all, new material to make the learning of English stimulating and motivating for both adult and young adult learners. The course combines the best of traditional

OXFORD

**NEW**



# **New** **Headway** **Plus**

**Beginner**  
**Student's Book**

**John and Liz Soars**

**OXFORD**  
UNIVERSITY PRESS



# CONTENTS

## UNIT

## GRAMMAR

### 1 Hello!

p6

#### *am/are/is, my/your*

*I'm Pablo.*

*My name's Judy.*

*What's your name? p6*

#### *This is ...*

*This is Ben.*

*Nice to meet you. p7*

### 2 Your world

p12

#### *he/she/they, his/her*

*He's from the United States.*

*Her name's Karima. p13*

*They're on holiday. p16*

#### *Questions*

*What's his name?*

*Where's she from? p13*

### 3 All about you

p18

#### *am/are/is*

*We're all students. p20*

#### *Negatives*

*She isn't a nurse. p18*

*I'm not from Scotland. p20*

*They aren't from Ireland. p20*

#### *Questions*

*What's his address? How old is he?*

*Is he married? p19*

#### *Short answers*

*Yes, he is. / No, he isn't. p20*

### 4 Family and friends

p24

#### *Possessive adjectives*

*my, your, our, their p24*

#### *Possessive's*

*Annie's husband Jim's office p24*

#### *has/have*

*I have a small hotel. She has a job.*

*We have three sons. p27*

#### *Adjective + noun*

*a small hotel a big house a good job p27*

### 5 The way I live

p32

#### *Present Simple I/you/we/they*

*I like ice-cream. I don't like tennis.*

*Do you like football? p33*

*Where do you work? Do you live in Dundee? p34*

*In Portugal they speak Portuguese. p36*

#### *a and an*

*a waiter, an engineer, an Italian restaurant p34*

#### *Adjective + noun*

*a German car Spanish oranges p37*

### 6 Every day

p40

#### *Present Simple he/she*

*He gets up at 6.00.*

*He has lunch in his office. p42*

*She lives in a small house. p44*

#### *Questions and negatives*

*What time does he have breakfast?*

*He doesn't live in London. p43*

#### *Adverbs of frequency*

*He always works late.*

*He never goes out. p42*

### 7 My favourites

p48

#### *Question words*

*who, where, why, how p48*

#### *Pronouns*

#### *Subject/Object/Possessive*

*I/me/my we/us/our they/them/ their p49*

#### *this and that*

*I like this coffee. Who's that? p50*



## VOCABULARY

## SKILLS WORK

## EVERYDAY ENGLISH

### How are you?

*How are you? Fine, thanks.  
Very well, thank you. p8*

### What's this in English?

*It's a photograph.  
a computer, a camera, a bag p10*

### Numbers 1–10 and plurals

*three houses nine students p11*

### Speaking

*Introductions p6–7*

*Good morning!*

*Practising conversations p9*

### Good morning!

*Goodbye!*

*What a lovely day!*

*See you later!*

*A cup of tea, please.*

*Have a nice day.*

*Good night! p9*

### Countries

*Portugal, China, Spain p12*

### Adjectives

*awful, really good, fantastic, beautiful p16*

### Nouns

*centre, hospital, building, park p16*

### Reading and speaking

*Where are they from?*

*Two people on holiday in New York p16*

### Numbers 11–30

*fifteen*

*twenty-one p17*

### Jobs

*a police officer, a nurse p18*

### Personal information

*surname, first name, address,  
phone number, married p19*

### Reading and listening

*Hello! We're on a mountain!*

*An interview with students on a charity*

*walk p22*

### Roleplay

*Interview on a mountain p22*

### Social Expressions (1)

*I'm sorry.*

*That's OK.*

*Excuse me!*

*I don't understand.*

*I don't know. p23*

### The family

*mother, son, wife, ... p25*

### Describing a friend

*very beautiful, really funny,  
a lot of friends, her favourite team p28*

### Reading and writing

*My best friend*

*A description of a friend p28*

### Listening

*Who are they?*

*Listen and identify the people p25, p29*

### The alphabet

*a, b, c ...*

*How do you spell ...? p30*

### On the phone

*Good morning. Laxcon International.*

*The Manager, please.*

*Sam Benting speaking. p31*

*Saying email addresses*

*pam@hotmail.com p31*

### Sports/Food/Drinks

*tennis, swimming burgers, oranges  
tea, coffee, juice p32*

### Adjectives

*exciting, delicious, great p33*

### Verbs

*live, work, come, play, speak, want p34*

### Languages and nationalities

*German, Japanese p36*

### Listening

*Where is Colin? Who is he with? p35*

### Listening and speaking

*At a dinner party*

*Two people meet and talk p38*

### Roleplay

*At a dinner party*

### How much is it?

*Numbers 1–100*

*30, 40, 50 ... p39*

*Prices*

*75p £20 £50 \$100*

*How much is ...? p39*

### The time

*It's nine o'clock. It's ten fifteen.*

*What time is it? p40*

### Verbs and nouns

*have breakfast leave school get home p41*

### Verbs

*cook, listen, play p44*

### Nouns

*eggs, toast, beach p44*

### Words that go together

*get up early, watch TV p46*

### Speaking

*Lifestyle questionnaire*

*Do you get up early?*

*Do you go shopping at the weekend? p46*

### Days of the week

*Monday, Tuesday ...*

*today, tomorrow*

### Prepositions of time

*on Sunday*

*at nine o'clock*

*in the morning p47*

### Adjectives

*lovely, terrible p52*

*comfortable, friendly p53*

### Opposite adjectives

*new/old, big/small p52*

### Places

*railway station, chemist p55*

### Reading and writing

*A postcard from San Francisco*

*A holiday postcard p53*

### Roleplay

*Conversations in town p55*

### Can I ...?

*Can I have a return ticket?*

*Can I try on this jumper, please? p54*





## 8 Where I live

p56

### There is/are ...

There's an old sofa.  
Are there any armchairs?  
There are some books. p57

### Prepositions

in, on, under, next to p58



## 9 Times past

p64

### was/were born

When were you born?  
I was born in 1996. p65

### Past Simple – irregular verbs

went, came, saw  
She went shopping. p68



## 10 We had a great time!

p72

### Past Simple – regular and irregular

played, got, watched, did p72

### Questions

What did you do?  
Did you go out? p73

### Negatives

They didn't go to work. p73

### ago

I went to Rome ten years ago. p78



## 11 I can do that!

p80

### can/can't

He can speak French. I can't draw.  
Can she run fast? p80

### Adverbs

I can cook a little bit. I can't cook at all.  
really well, fluently p82

### Requests and offers

Can you tell me the time? Can I help you? p83



## 12 Please and thank you

p88

### I'd like ...

I'd like some chicken.  
How much would you like? p88

### some and any

I'd like some cheese.  
Do you have any Emmental?  
I don't have any apple juice. p89

### like and would like

I like cola.  
I like going to the mall.  
I'd like to go out. p91



## 13 Here and now

p96

### Present Continuous

She's wearing a T-shirt.  
What's he doing? p97

### Present Simple and Present Continuous

He lives in London.  
They're staying in a hotel. p98



## 14 It's time to go!

p104

### Future plans

They're going on holiday.  
Which countries are you going to visit?  
I'm leaving on Tuesday.  
What are you doing this evening? p104

### Revision

Question words – when, where, who, how p106  
Tenses – present, past, and future tenses p110



## VOCABULARY

### Rooms and furniture

living room, bedroom  
cooker, sofa p56

### In and out of town

mountain, beach, ferry, fishing, sailing p60  
post office, hospital, castle p63

### Saying years

2010, 1996 p64

### People and jobs

singer, politician, artist p66

### Irregular verbs

had, made, bought p68

### have, do, go

have lunch, do homework, go shopping p70

### Weekend activities

go to the mall, have a meal,  
see your friends p75

### Time expressions

at 8 o'clock, on Monday, last night p75

### Sports and leisure

tennis, skiing, windsurfing p76

### play or go?

play tennis, go skiing p76

### Seasons

winter, summer p77

### Verbs

draw, run, drive, use a computer p80

### Verb + noun

listen to the radio chat to friends p84

### Adjective + noun

fast car, busy city, dangerous sport p86

### Opposite adjectives

dangerous/safe, old/modern, old/young p86

### Shopping

bread, milk, fruit, stamps, shampoo, cheese,  
chicken, conditioner p88

### Food

cereal, salad, pasta, fish p92

### In a restaurant

menu, starter, dessert  
soup, salmon, mixed salad p94

### Roleplay

Ordering a meal  
Are you ready to order? p94

### Colours

blue, red, green p96

### Clothes

jacket, trousers, shoes and socks p96

### Opposite verbs

buy/sell, love/hate, open/close p102

### Transport

travel by bus, coach, motorbike, plane p104

### Revision

#### Words that go together

pay bills, menu/waiter p107

#### Which word is different?

train bus bridge p107

#### Pronunciation

Two and three syllables – married vegetable

Words that rhyme – some/come p107

## SKILLS WORK

### Reading and vocabulary

Vancouver – the best city in the world  
What to do and where to go p60

### Listening and writing

My home town  
Steve talks about living in Vancouver  
Write about a town you know p62

### Listening and speaking

Magalie Dromard  
Magalie talks about her family  
Talk about your family p65

### Reading and speaking

It's a Jackson Pollock!  
An American woman finds a famous painting  
Telling a story from pictures p68

### Speaking

Did you have a good weekend?  
A questionnaire. p74

### Listening and speaking

Jack and Millie Parker's holiday  
A couple talk about their holidays p77  
Asking about holidays p77

### Speaking and writing

My last holiday  
What is your favourite kind of holiday?  
Where did you go on your last holiday? p78

### Reading and listening

The Internet  
What can you do on the Internet? p84  
Five people talk about what they do on  
the Internet p85

### Listening

Conversations with Adam p89  
Birthday wishes  
What people want on their birthday p90

### Reading and speaking

You are what you eat  
People from different parts of the world  
describe what they eat p92  
Discussion – what is a good diet? p92

### Reading and listening

This week is different  
Colin, a millionaire, gives money to  
homeless teenagers p100  
Conversations with Colin p101

### Reading and speaking

Life's big events  
Three people talk about their past,  
present, and future p108

### A mini autobiography

I was born in ...  
I grew up in ...  
I'm studying ...  
I want to be a ...  
I'm going to ... p109

## EVERYDAY ENGLISH

### Directions

Turn right.  
Go straight on.  
Is there a ... near here? p63

### When's your birthday?

Months  
January, February ... p71  
Ordinal numbers  
first, fifth, tenth ... p71  
Saying dates  
the sixth of April p71

### Making conversation – showing interest

Really? Oh! Good! Mmm! p75

### Going sightseeing

Can I have a map of the town?  
We want to go on a bus tour.  
How much is it to get in? p79

### Everyday problems

I can't get on the Internet!  
I'm lost!  
This machine doesn't work!  
Turn everything off ... p87

### Roleplay

Making offers to guests  
Would you like a cold drink? What would  
you like?  
Would you like to watch the football? p89

### Signs all around

Where can you see these signs?  
Way in  
No entry  
Push  
Queue here p95

### What's the matter?

I'm tired/thirsty/bored.  
She has a headache/a cold.  
Why don't you ...?  
That's a good idea. p103

### Social expressions (2)

Good luck in the exam!  
Don't worry!  
It doesn't matter!  
That's so kind of you!  
Thanks for everything!  
It was a pleasure. p111





# 1

# Hello!

*am/are/is, my/your* • This is ... • How are you? • Good morning!  
What's this in English? • Numbers 1-10 • Plurals

## STARTER

**T1.1** Listen. Say your name.



Hello. I'm Josef.



## WHAT'S YOUR NAME?

*am/are/is, my/your*

**1** **T1.2** Read and listen.

**Pablo** Hello. I'm Pablo. What's your name?

**Ahmed** My name's Ahmed.

**Pablo** Hello, Ahmed.

**T1.2** Listen and repeat.

### GRAMMAR SPOT

I'm = I am

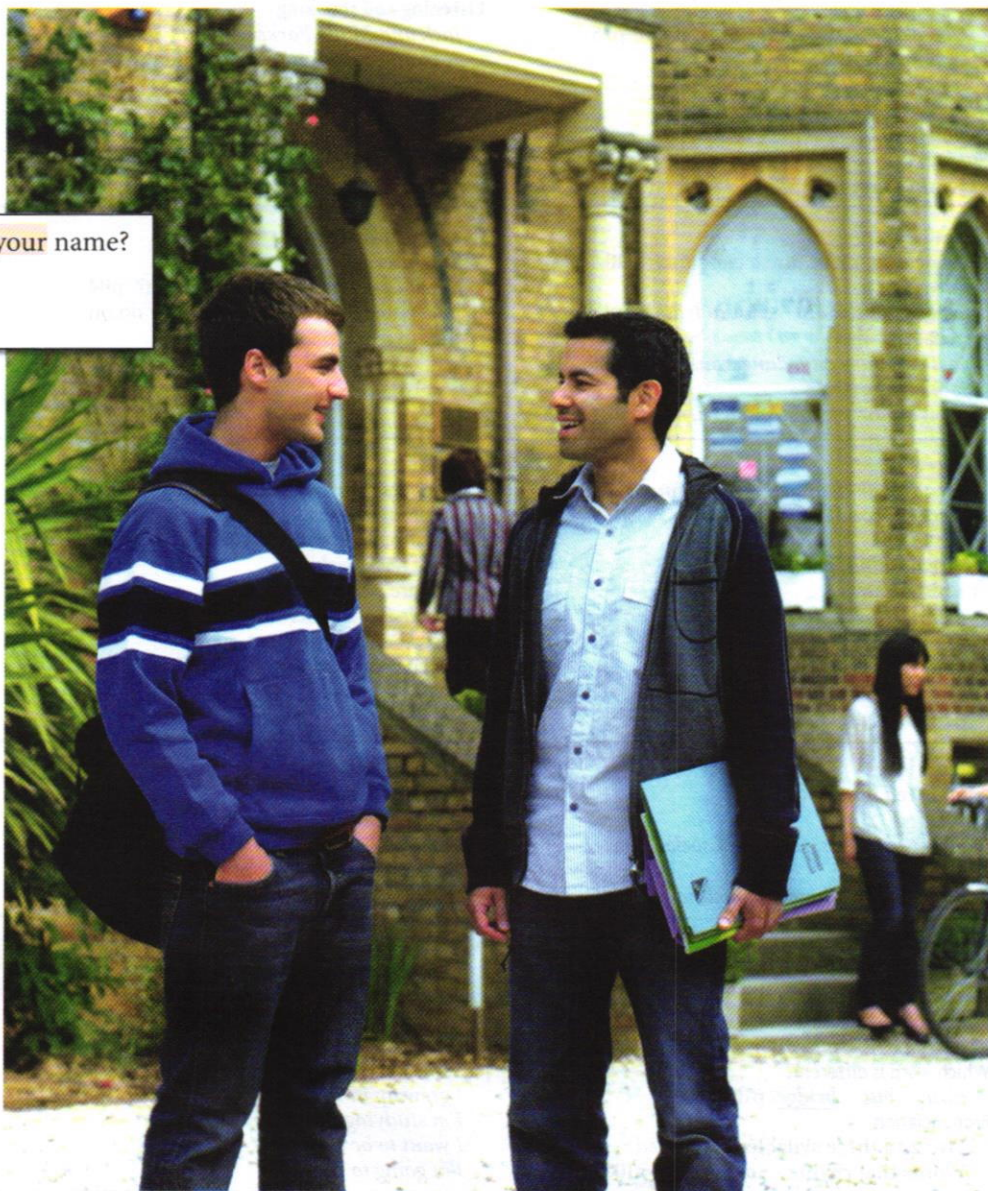
name's = name is

What's = What is

**2** Stand up and practise.

Hello. I'm \_\_\_\_\_.  
What's your name?

My name's \_\_\_\_\_.





# INTRODUCTIONS

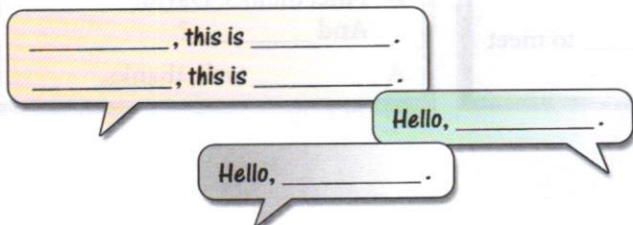
This is...

1 T1.3 Read and listen.



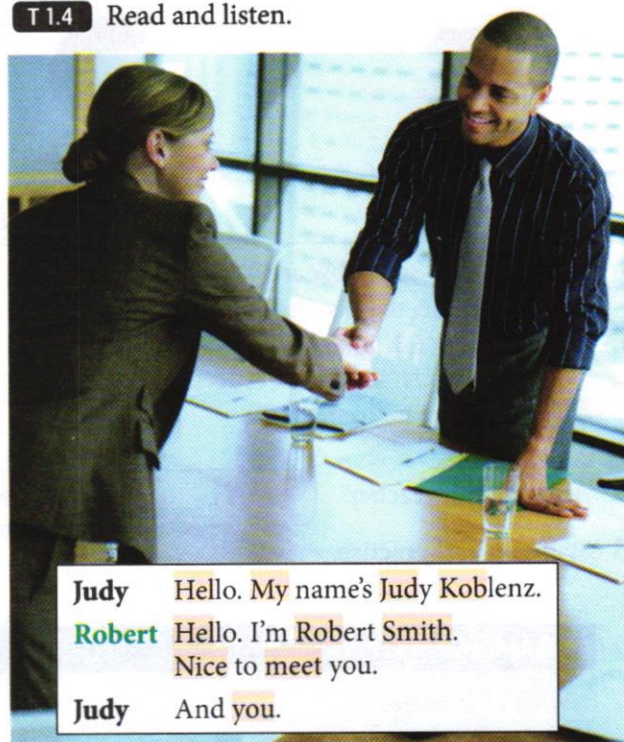
T1.3 Listen and repeat.

2 Practise in groups of three.



Nice to meet you

3 T1.4 Read and listen.



T1.4 Listen and repeat.

4 Practise in pairs. Say your first name and surname.

A Hello. My name's \_\_\_\_\_.

B Hello. I'm \_\_\_\_\_.  
Nice to meet you.

A And you.

5 T1.5 Listen to the English names.

♂ James Bond Robert Taylor Henry Baker

♀ Susie Walsh Anita Johnson Katherine Smith

Choose a name. Stand up and say hello.





# HOW ARE YOU?

## 1 T 1.6 Read and listen.



1 **Pablo** Hi, Ben. How are you?  
**Ben** Fine, thanks, Pablo. And you?  
**Pablo** I'm OK, thanks.



2 **Ben** Hello, Ahmed. How are you?  
**Ahmed** Very well, thank you. How are you?  
**Ben** Fine.

## T 1.6 Listen and repeat.

### 2 Answer your teacher.

Hi, \_\_\_\_\_. How are you?

Fine, thanks.

Fine, thanks. And you?

### 3 Stand up and practise.

Very well, thank you.

OK, thanks.

## GRAMMAR SPOT

Write 'm, is, or are.

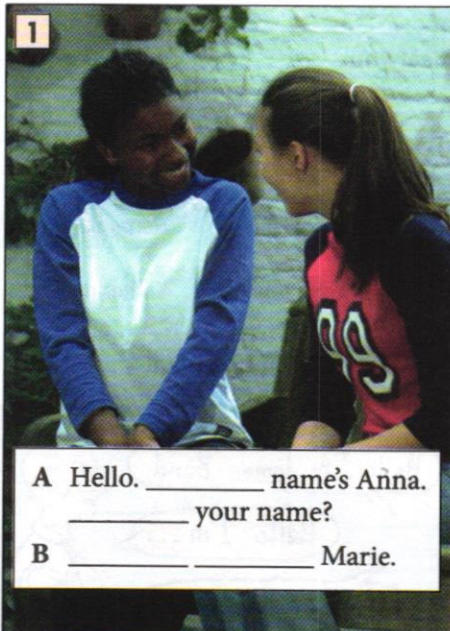
I \_\_\_\_ Sandra.

How \_\_\_\_ you?

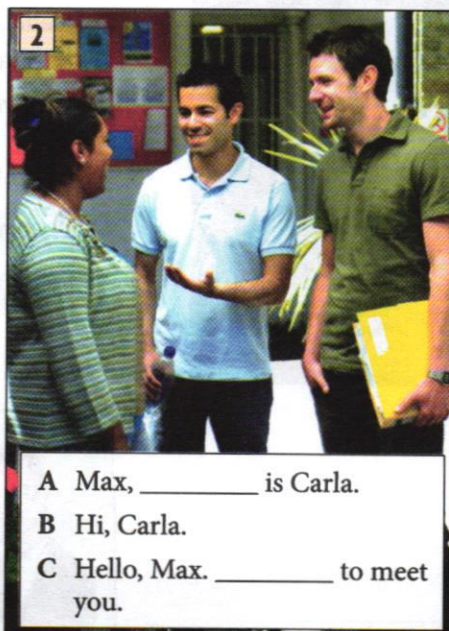
This \_\_\_\_ John.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 1.1–1.3 p123

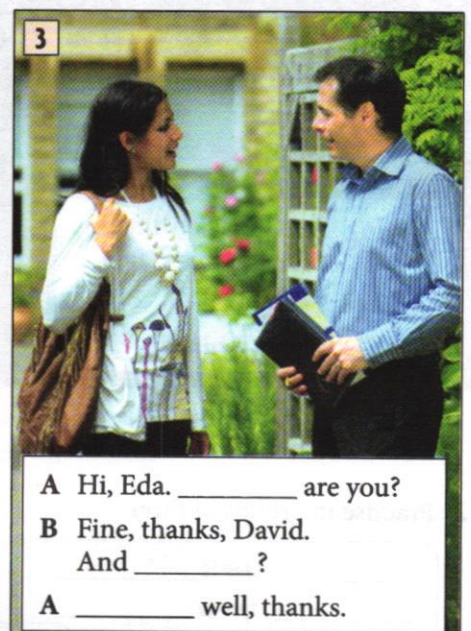
## 4 Complete the conversations.



1  
**A** Hello. \_\_\_\_\_ name's Anna.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ your name?  
**B** \_\_\_\_\_ Marie.



2  
**A** Max, \_\_\_\_\_ is Carla.  
**B** Hi, Carla.  
**C** Hello, Max. \_\_\_\_\_ to meet you.



3  
**A** Hi, Eda. \_\_\_\_\_ are you?  
**B** Fine, thanks, David.  
 And \_\_\_\_\_?  
**A** \_\_\_\_\_ well, thanks.

## T 1.7 Listen and check. Practise the conversations.



# EVERYDAY ENGLISH

## Good morning!

1 Complete the conversations.

Goodbye!      Good night!      **Good morning!**      Good afternoon!

- 1 A Good morning!  
B Good morning!  
What a lovely day!



- 2 A \_\_\_\_\_  
B Hello. A cup of tea, please.



- 3 A \_\_\_\_\_  
B Bye! See you later!



- 4 A \_\_\_\_\_  
B Good night! Sleep well!



Put the words in the correct order.

- 1 A Good morning!  
**are you How today**  
How are you today ?  
B Fine, thanks.

- 2 A Good afternoon!  
B Good afternoon!  
**coffee cup please of A**  
\_\_\_\_\_.

- 3 A Goodbye!  
**nice Have day a**  
\_\_\_\_\_.  
B Thank you. And you.  
**you later See**  
\_\_\_\_\_.

- 4 A Good night!  
**well Sleep**  
\_\_\_\_\_.  
B Thank you.  
**you And**  
\_\_\_\_\_.

**T 1.8** Listen and check. Practise the conversations.

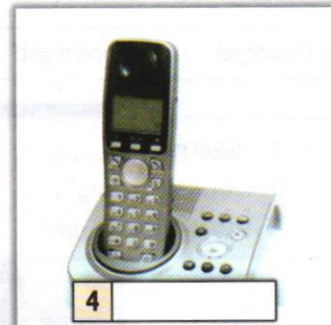
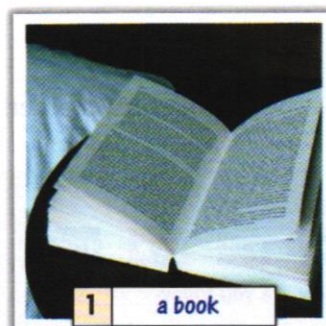
**T 1.9** Listen and check. Practise the conversations.



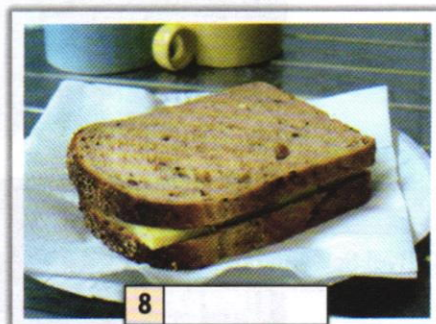
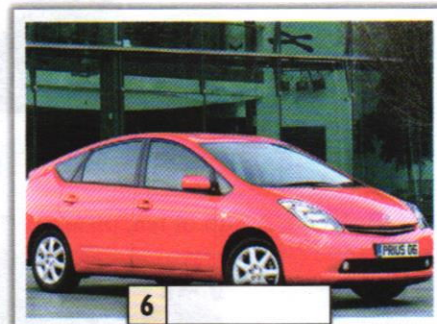
# VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

What's this in English?

1 Write the words.



a book  
a camera  
a car  
a photograph  
a computer  
a bag  
a burger  
a television  
a phone  
a sandwich  
a bus  
a house



2 T 1.10 Listen and repeat the words.

3 T 1.11 Listen and repeat.

What's this in English?

It's a photograph.

Work with a partner. Point to a picture. Ask and answer questions.

## GRAMMAR SPOT

It's = It is

4 Go to things in the room. Ask your teacher.

What's this in English?

It's a ...



# Numbers 1–10 and plurals

1 **T 1.12** Read and listen.  
Practise the numbers.

**1** one

**2** two

**3** three

**4** four

**5** five

**6** six

**7** seven

**8** eight

**9** nine

**10** ten

2 Say the numbers round the class.

3 Write the numbers.



a five books



b \_\_\_\_\_ cars



c \_\_\_\_\_ houses



d \_\_\_\_\_ cameras



e \_\_\_\_\_ photographs



f \_\_\_\_\_ sandwiches



g \_\_\_\_\_ computers



h \_\_\_\_\_ buses



i \_\_\_\_\_ students

**T 1.13** Listen and check.

4 Ask and answer questions.

What's in this picture?

Nine photographs.

5 **T 1.14** Listen and repeat.

/s/	/z/	/ɪz/
book <sub>s</sub>	car <sub>s</sub>	sandwich <sub>es</sub>
photograph <sub>s</sub>	computer <sub>s</sub>	hous <sub>es</sub>
student <sub>s</sub>	burger <sub>s</sub>	bus <sub>es</sub>
	camera <sub>s</sub>	
	television <sub>s</sub>	
	bag <sub>s</sub>	
	phone <sub>s</sub>	

## GRAMMAR SPOT

### Singular

one book

one bus

### Plural

two books

two buses

►► Grammar Reference 1.4 p123





# 2

## Your world

Countries • *he/she/they, his/her* • Where's he from?  
*fantastic/awful/beautiful* • Numbers 11–30



### STARTER

Find your country on the map on page 13. Find these countries on the map.

Australia Brazil Egypt China England France Italy Hungary Japan Russia Spain Saudi Arabia

**T 2.1** Listen and repeat.

### SHE'S FROM JAPAN

*he/she, his/her*

**1** **T 2.2** Read and listen.



**Pablo** Where are you from, Ahmed?

**Ahmed** I'm from Egypt. Where are you from?

**Pablo** I'm from Spain. From Barcelona.

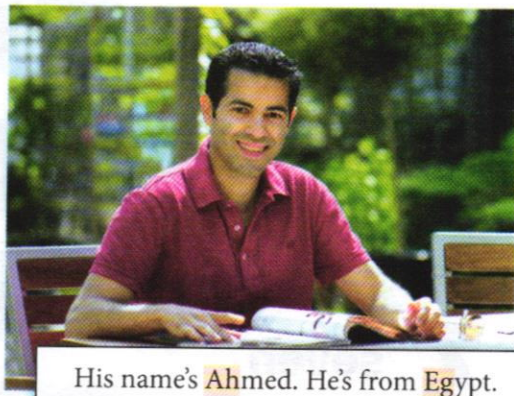
**T 2.2** Listen and repeat.

**2** Where are you from? Stand up and practise.

Where are you from?

I'm from Italy/Libya ... Where ... ?

**3** **T 2.3** Read, listen, and repeat.



His name's Ahmed. He's from Egypt.



Her name's Miki. She's from Japan.

### GRAMMAR SPOT

he's = he is

she's = she is

► Grammar Reference 2.1–2.2 p123

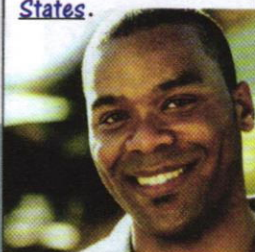


## QUESTIONS


Where's he from?

- 1 Complete the sentences about the people.


1 His name's Kevin.  
He's from the United States.



2 \_\_\_\_\_ name's László.  
He's \_\_\_\_\_.




3 \_\_\_\_\_ name's Karima.  
She's \_\_\_\_\_.




4 \_\_\_\_\_ name's Tatiana.  
She's \_\_\_\_\_.




5 \_\_\_\_\_ name's Rosely.  
She's \_\_\_\_\_.




6 \_\_\_\_\_ name's Simon.  
He's \_\_\_\_\_.



7 \_\_\_\_\_ name's Yong.  
He's \_\_\_\_\_.



8 \_\_\_\_\_ name's Hayley.  
She's \_\_\_\_\_.



T 2.4 Listen and check. Repeat the sentences.

- 2 T 2.5 Listen and repeat the questions.

What's his name? Where's he from?

What's her name? Where's she from?



- 3 Ask and answer questions about the people in the photographs.

What's his name?

His name's Kevin.

Where's he from?

He's from the United States.

### GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Where's = Where is
- 2 Complete the questions with *is* or *are*.  
Where \_\_\_\_\_ she from?  
Where \_\_\_\_\_ he from?  
Where \_\_\_\_\_ you from?

►► Grammar Reference 2.3 p123



# PRACTICE

## Cities and countries

1 Where are the cities? Ask and answer.

Where's Barcelona?

It's in Spain.

**Barcelona**

**São Paulo**

**Beijing**

**Sydney**

**Moscow**

**Damascus**

**Cairo**

**Budapest**

**Los Angeles**

**London**

**T 2.6** Listen and check.

2 Work with a partner.

**Student A** Look at the photos on this page.

**Student B** Look at the photos on p140.

Ask questions and write the answers.

What's his/her name?

Where's he/she from?

## Talking about you

3 Ask about the students in the class.

What's his name?

His name's Rashid.

Where's he from?

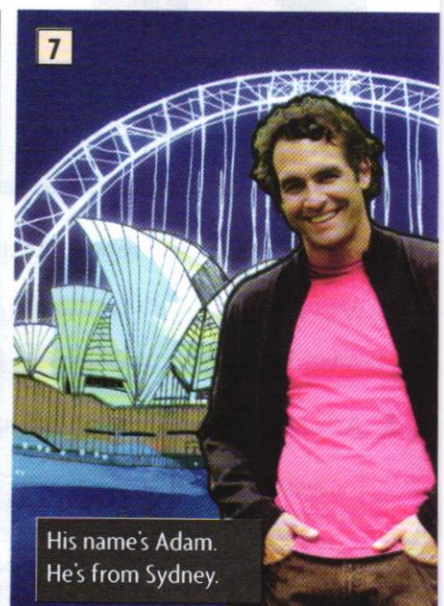
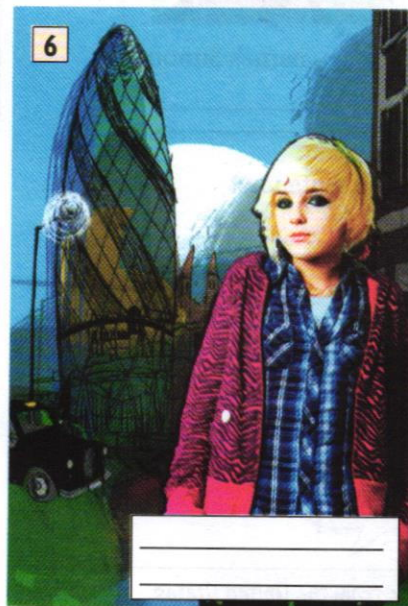
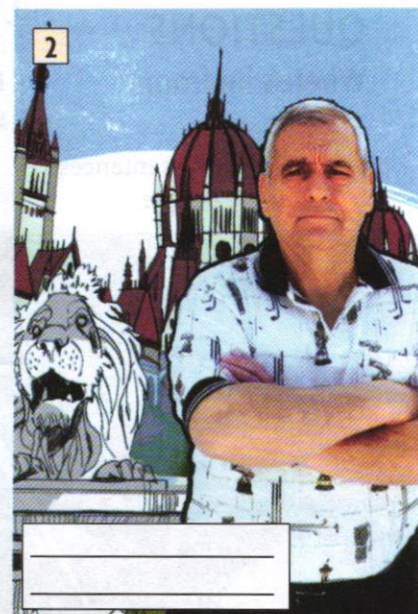
He's from Oman.  
From Muscat.

What's her name?

Her name's Salma.

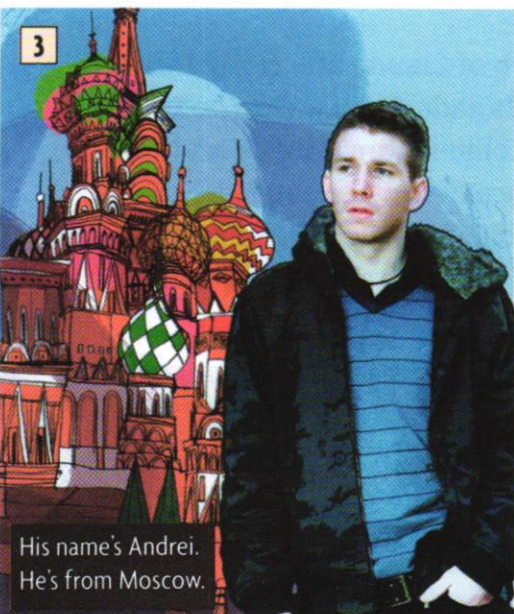
Where's she from?

She's from Oman, too.

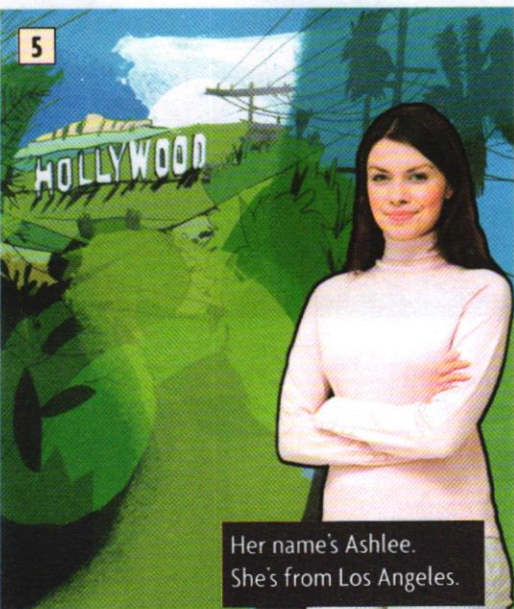




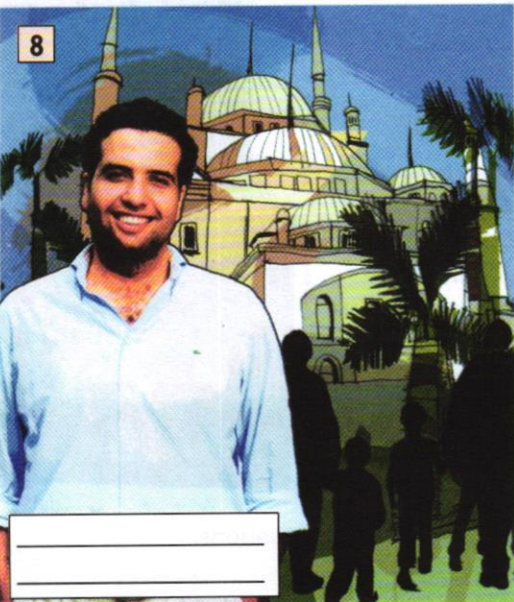
3



5



8



## Questions and answers

4 **T 2.7** Listen and complete the conversation. Practise it.



**Rosely** Hello, I'm Rosely. What's your name?

**Bruno** \_\_\_\_\_ name's Bruno.

**R** Hello, Bruno. Where are you \_\_\_\_\_?

**B** \_\_\_\_\_ from Brazil. Where are you from?

**R** Oh, I'm from Brazil, too. \_\_\_\_\_ from São Paulo.

**B** Really? I'm from São Paulo, too!

**R** Oh, nice to meet you, Bruno.

5 **T 2.8** Listen and write the countries.

1 Claudia: Italy Akemi: \_\_\_\_\_

2 Charles: \_\_\_\_\_ Bud: \_\_\_\_\_

3 Loretta and Jane: \_\_\_\_\_

6 Match the questions and answers.

1 ☒ Where are you from?

2 ☐ What's her name?

3 ☐ What's his name?

4 ☐ Where's he from?

5 ☐ What's this in English?

6 ☐ How are you?

7 ☐ Where's Montreal?

a His name's Fadi.

b He's from Amman.

c It's in Canada.

d I'm from Japan.

e Fine, thanks.

f Her name's Tatiana.

g It's a computer.

**T 2.9** Listen and check.

Work with a partner. Take turns to cover the questions or the answers. Practise them.

## Check it

7 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

1 ☐ My name Ahmed.

☒ My name's Ahmed.

2 ☐ What's he's name?

☐ What's his name?

3 ☐ 'What's his name?' 'Kevin.'

☐ 'What's her name?' 'Kevin.'

4 ☐ He's from Libya.

☐ His from Libya.

5 ☐ Where she from?

☐ Where's she from?

6 ☐ What's her name?

☐ What's she name?



## READING AND SPEAKING

Where are they from?

1 **T 2.10** Read and listen.

This is a photograph of **Claude** and **Holly Duval** from Montreal, in Canada. They are on holiday in New York City. Holly is from Canada and Claude is from France. They are married. Holly is a teacher. Her school is in the centre of Montreal. Claude is a doctor. His hospital is in the centre of Montreal, too.



2 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Holly is from \_\_\_\_\_ in Canada.
- 2 She's a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Her \_\_\_\_\_ is in the centre of Montreal.
- 4 Claude is from \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 He's a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 His hospital is in the \_\_\_\_\_ of Montreal.
- 7 They \_\_\_\_\_ in New York.
- 8 They are \_\_\_\_\_.

3 Write questions with *What ... ?* and *Where ... ?* about Claude and Holly. Ask a partner.

*What ... name?      Where ... from?*  
*Where ... school?      Where ... hospital?*

### GRAMMAR SPOT

Write *is* or *are*.

She \_\_\_\_\_ a teacher.

He \_\_\_\_\_ a doctor.

They \_\_\_\_\_ from Canada.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 2.4 p123

4 **T 2.11** Listen to Claude and Holly. Complete the conversations.

1 **awful** ☹️ **weather**  
 C Oh, no! Look at the weather !  
 H Ugh! It's \_\_\_\_\_ !

2 **really good** 😊 **burger**  
 H Wow! Look at my \_\_\_\_\_ !  
 It's fantastic!  
 C My burger is \_\_\_\_\_ , too!

3 **fantastic** 😊 **building**  
 C What's this building ?  
 H It's the Empire State Building!  
 It's \_\_\_\_\_ !

4 **beautiful** 😊 **Look**  
 C Wow! \_\_\_\_\_ at Central Park!  
 H It's \_\_\_\_\_ !



**T 2.11** Listen and check. Practise the conversations.



# EVERYDAY ENGLISH

## Numbers 11–30

1 Say the numbers 1–10 round the class.

2 **T 2.12** Listen, read, and repeat.

<b>11</b> eleven	<b>12</b> twelve	<b>13</b> thirteen	<b>14</b> fourteen	<b>15</b> fifteen
<b>16</b> sixteen	<b>17</b> seventeen	<b>18</b> eighteen	<b>19</b> nineteen	<b>20</b> twenty

Say the numbers 1–20 round the class.

3 Write the numbers your teacher says. Say the numbers your teacher writes.

4 Match the numbers.

<b>21</b>	twenty-five
<b>22</b>	twenty-seven
<b>23</b>	twenty-one
<b>24</b>	twenty-eight
<b>25</b>	twenty-two
<b>26</b>	twenty-four
<b>27</b>	twenty-nine
<b>28</b>	twenty-three
<b>29</b>	thirty
<b>30</b>	twenty-six

**T 2.13** Listen and repeat. Say the numbers 1–30 round the class.

5 **T 2.14** Listen and tick (✓) the numbers you hear.

1	<b>22</b>	<b>12</b> ✓	<b>10</b>	<b>20</b>
2	<b>17</b>	<b>15</b>	<b>16</b>	<b>14</b>
3	<b>21</b>	<b>29</b>	<b>19</b>	<b>9</b>
4	<b>11</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>17</b>	<b>27</b>
5	<b>23</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>13</b>	<b>30</b>

6 Work with a partner.

**Student A** Write five numbers. Say them to your partner.

**Student B** Write the numbers you hear. **14 24 ...**

7 Look at the pictures. How old is he/she?

I think she's 18 months.

No, I think she's about 2.



**T 2.15** Listen and find out.





# 3

## All about you

Jobs • am/are/is • Negatives and questions • Personal information • Social expressions (1)



### STARTER

1 Match the jobs and the pictures.

a doctor a nurse a student ~~a teacher~~ a shop assistant  
a bus driver a businessman a police officer a builder



1 a teacher



2



3



4



5



6



7



8



9

T 3.1 Listen and repeat.

2 T 3.2 Read the questions and answers. Listen and repeat.

What's his job? He's a teacher.

What's her job? She's a doctor.



Look at the pictures. Ask and answer questions with a partner.

3 What's your job? Ask and answer.

What's your job?

I'm a student.

I'm a businessman.

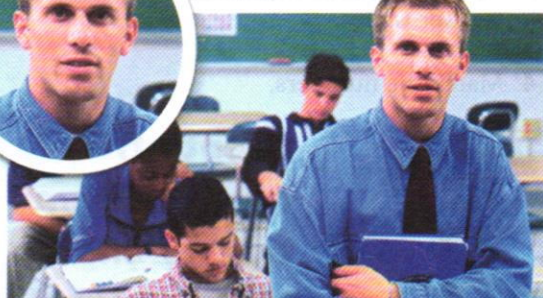
### HE ISN'T A STUDENT

Negatives – *he isn't*

1 Look and read.



Student? Teacher?



He isn't a student. He's a teacher.



Nurse? Doctor?



She isn't a nurse. She's a doctor.

T 3.3 Listen and repeat.

2 Look at pictures 1–9 again.  
Make more negative and positive sentences.

He/She isn't a ... He/She's a ...

### GRAMMAR SPOT

He's a teacher. 's = is

She **isn't** a nurse. **isn't** = is not



# PERSONAL INFORMATION

## Questions and answers

1 Look at the photos and read Kiran's profile.



### friendspace








### PROFILE

## Kiran Patel

Surname:	Patel
First name:	Kiran
Country:	England
Address:	29, Victoria Road, Birmingham
Phone number:	07700 955031
Age:	20
Job:	Student
Married:	No

### Kiran's Photos






2 Complete the questions and answers.

- What's his surname? Patel
- What's his \_\_\_\_\_? Kiran
- Where's he \_\_\_\_\_? England
- What's his \_\_\_\_\_? 29, Victoria Road, Birmingham
- What's his \_\_\_\_\_? 07700 955031
- How old is he? He's \_\_\_\_\_.
- What's \_\_\_\_\_? He's \_\_\_\_\_.
- Is he \_\_\_\_\_? No, he isn't.

**T 3.4** Listen and check. Practise the questions and answers.

3 **T 3.5** Read and listen. Then listen and repeat.

- |                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| Is Kiran from Japan? | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No, he isn't. |
| Is he from China?    | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No, he isn't. |
| Is he from England?  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes, he is.   |

4 Ask and answer questions about Kiran.

- Is he from London? Liverpool? Birmingham?
- Is he 16? 18? 20?
- Is he a teacher? a doctor? a student?
- Is he married?

5 Complete the sentences.

- Kiran isn't from Japan.  
He 's from England.
- His phone number \_\_\_\_\_ 07700 995031.  
It \_\_\_\_\_ 07700 955031.
- He \_\_\_\_\_ 18. He \_\_\_\_\_ 20.
- He \_\_\_\_\_ married.



## 5 STUDENTS WALK FOR CHARITY

### Negatives – *I'm not, they aren't, we aren't*

1 Look at the pictures. Who are the people?

2 **T 3.6** Listen and complete the questions.

**T 3.6** Listen again and check. Practise the conversation.

#### GRAMMAR SPOT

##### 1 Negative

**I'm not** from Scotland. **I'm not** = I am not

**They aren't** from Ireland. **They aren't** = They are not

**We aren't** worried. **We aren't** = We are not

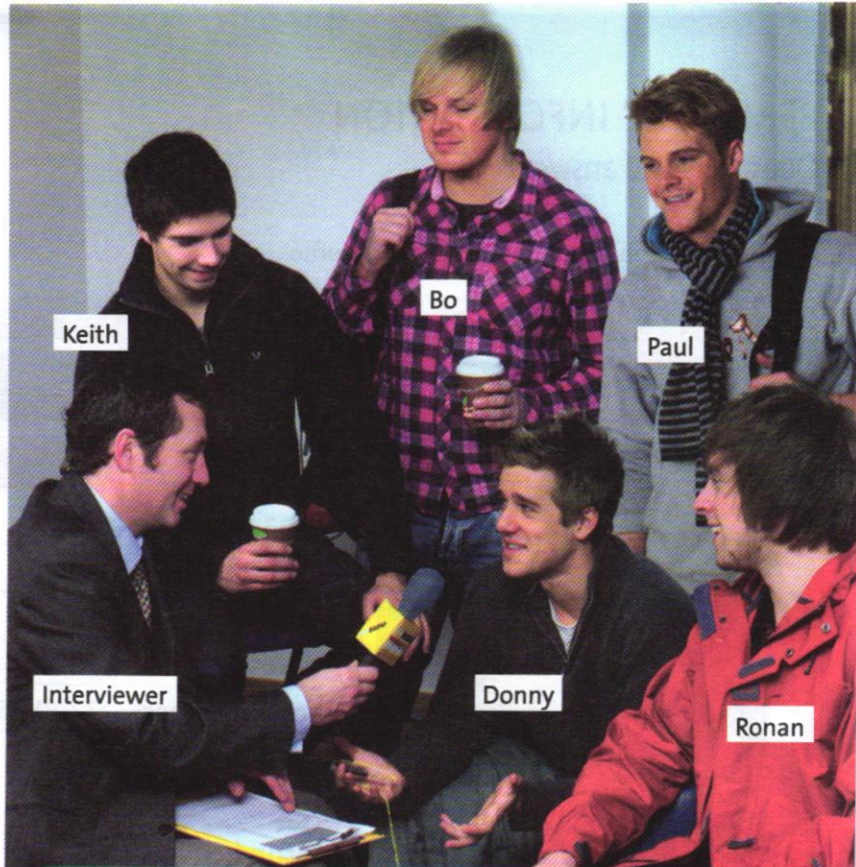
##### 2 Short answers

Are you from Scotland? **Yes, I am.** / **No, I'm not.**

Are they from Ireland? **Yes, they are.** / **No, they aren't.**

Are you worried? **Yes, we are.** / **No, we aren't.**

▶▶ Grammar Reference 3.1 p124



3 Answer the questions.

- 1 Are Paul and Donny brothers?
- 2 Are they from Scotland?
- 3 Are the other boys from Ireland?
- 4 Is it a difficult walk?
- 5 Are the boys worried?

**T 3.7** Listen and check. Practise the questions and answers.

4 Practise the interview in groups of three.

#### Talking about you

5 Ask and answer the questions about you.

Are you from Scotland?

No, ...

Are you from Ireland?

Are you a student?

I Hi! Are you the boys from the National University?

P+all Yes, we are.

I Great! And \_\_\_\_\_ Donny McNab?

P No, I'm not. I'm *Paul* McNab. This is Donny. He's my brother.

I Ah, yes, sorry. Hi, Donny. You're a student from Scotland, right?

D Well, yes, *I am* a student, but I'm not from Scotland.

I Oh, where \_\_\_\_\_ from?

P+D We're from here – Ireland.

I \_\_\_\_\_ the other boys from Ireland too?

D No, they aren't. They're all from different countries.

I Oh! Interesting! And \_\_\_\_\_ all students?

D Yes, they are. We're all ...

P Yeah, we're all students at the National University of Ireland, in Galway.

I Interesting! Now, this walk is difficult. Twelve mountains or 'Bens' in three days! Are you worried?

D Yes, it's very difficult, but we aren't worried!

I OK boys! Nice to meet you. Good luck to you all!

All Thank you very much.

The 12 'Bens' Charity Walk



## PRACTICE

### Is he a businessman?

1 Look at the pictures of Tarek and Grace. Where are they?

2 **T 3.8** Listen to the conversations. Complete the chart.

First name	Tarek	Grace
Surname	Elkushli	Chou
Country	Libya	
City/Town		
Phone number		212 638-9475
Age	42	
Job		Shop assistant
Married?		



**T 3.8** Listen again and check.

3 Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

- Is Tarek from Tripoli?  
Yes, he is.
- Is he a businessman?
- Is he 42?
- Is he married?
- Is Grace from Dubai?
- Is she a nurse?
- Is she 33?
- Is she married?

4 Talk about Tarek and Grace.

Tarek is from Tripoli. His surname is ...

Grace is from ...



### Talking about you

5 Complete the questions.

- What's your first name?
- \_\_\_\_\_ surname?
- \_\_\_\_\_ you from?
- \_\_\_\_\_ phone number?
- How old \_\_\_\_\_?
- \_\_\_\_\_ job?
- \_\_\_\_\_ married?

In groups, ask and answer the questions.

### Writing

6 Write about another student. Read it aloud.

Her name's ... She's from Jordan ... Her phone number is ...

### Check it

7 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

- ☐ She's name's Nora.  
☒ Her name's Nora.
- ☐ Her job is teacher.  
☐ She's a teacher.
- ☐ He's phone number is 796542.  
☐ His phone number is 796542.
- ☐ I'm not a doctor.  
☐ I amn't a doctor.
- ☐ They aren't from Italy.  
☐ They're no from Italy.
- ☐ She is no married.  
☐ She isn't married.



## READING AND LISTENING

### The charity walk

1 Look at the picture and read. Where are the boys?

### HELLO! WE'RE ON A MOUNTAIN!

The boys are all students on a charity walk in Ireland. They are from different countries. Paul and Donny McNab are from Ireland, they are brothers. Bo Olsson is from Sweden. Ronan Wilson is from Australia and Keith Massey is from England.

Now they are on Benbaun, a mountain in Ireland. They're on the phone to a newspaper journalist.

**Journalist** Hi, guys, where are you?

**Boys** Hi, we're on Benbaun. It's beautiful!

**Journalist** And how are you?

**Boys** We're all fine! It's fantastic here!

**Journalist** Are you tired?

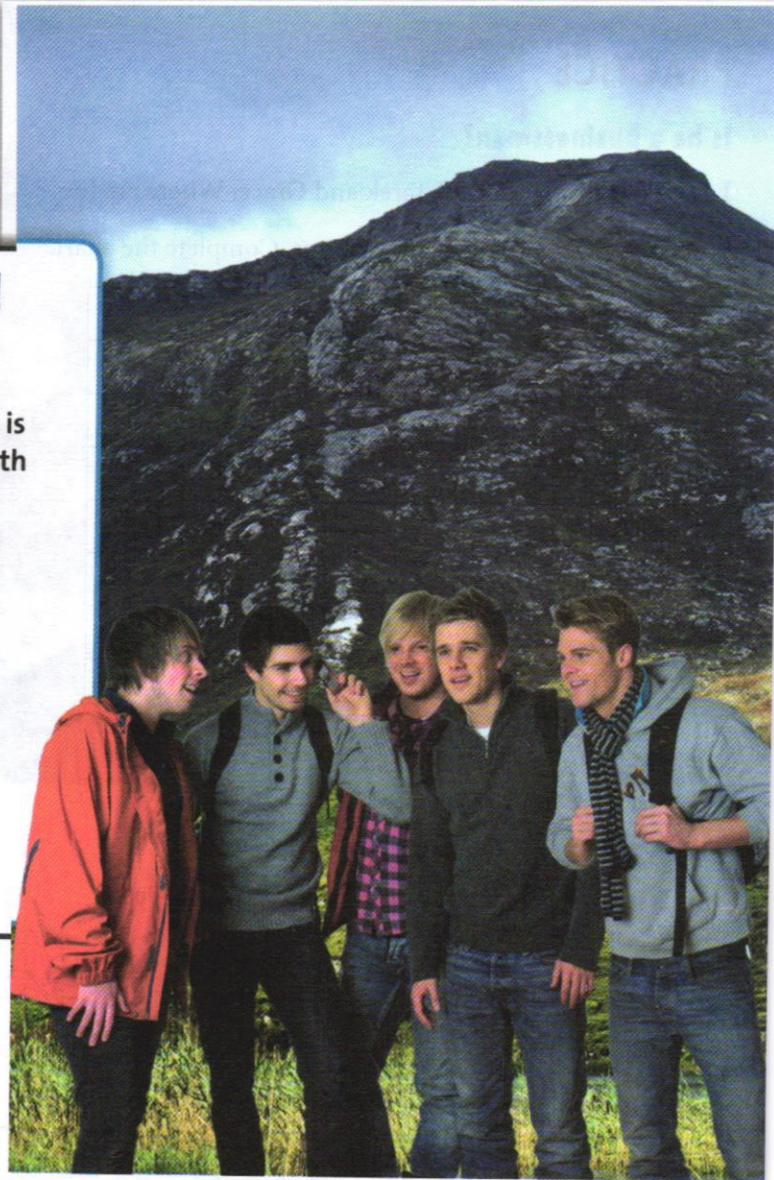
**Boys** No, we aren't. We're very happy and excited.

#### GRAMMAR SPOT

We're on a mountain. **we're** = we are

We aren't tired. **we aren't** = we are not

▶▶ Grammar Reference 3.2 p124



2 Answer the questions.

- 1 Are all the boys students?      2 Are they all brothers?
- 3 Are they all from Ireland?      4 Where are they now?
- 5 Are they happy?

3 Read about the boys again. Correct the information.

- 1 The boys are on holiday.  
They aren't on holiday! They're on a charity walk!
- 2 They're in Scotland. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Bo is from Australia. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Keith's from Sweden. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 They're on the phone to a friend. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 They're very tired. \_\_\_\_\_

**T 3.9** Listen and check. Practise the answers.

### Interview on a mountain

4 **T 3.10** Listen to the complete interview and underline the correct answer.

- 1 This is/isn't their first walk for charity.
- 2 The money is/isn't for an animal charity.
- 3 The boys are/aren't at the same university.
- 4 Ronan is 21/22.
- 5 Bo and Keith are both 18/19.
- 6 Donny and Paul are/aren't both 20.

### Roleplay

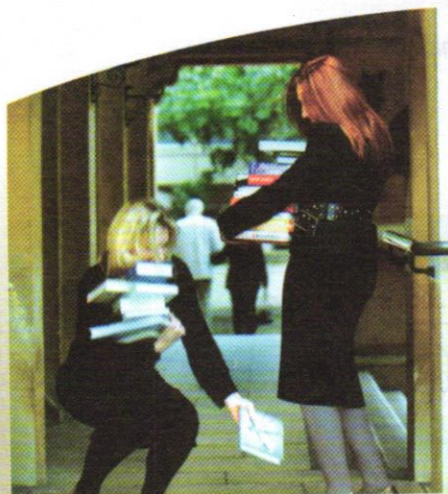
5 Work in groups. Go to tapescript 3.10 on page 113. Practise the interview.



# EVERYDAY ENGLISH

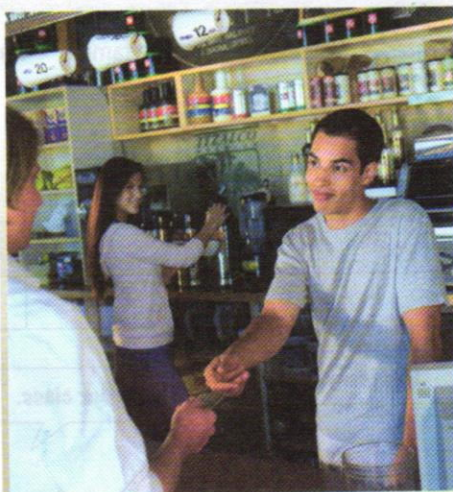
## Social expressions (1)

1 **T 3.11** Listen and look at the pictures.



**OK    sorry**

- 1 A I'm sorry.  
B That's \_\_\_\_\_.



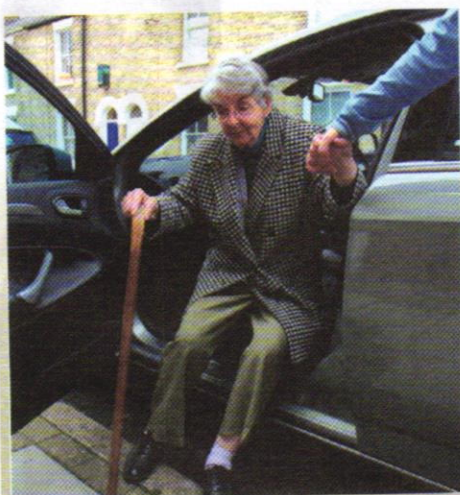
**Thanks    please**

- 2 C A coffee, \_\_\_\_\_.  
D That's £1.20.  
C \_\_\_\_\_ very much.



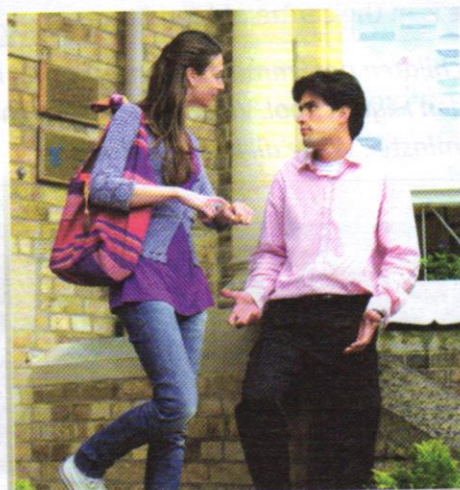
**Excuse    a lot    over there**

- 3 E \_\_\_\_\_ me!  
Where's the station?  
F It's \_\_\_\_\_.  
E Thanks \_\_\_\_\_.



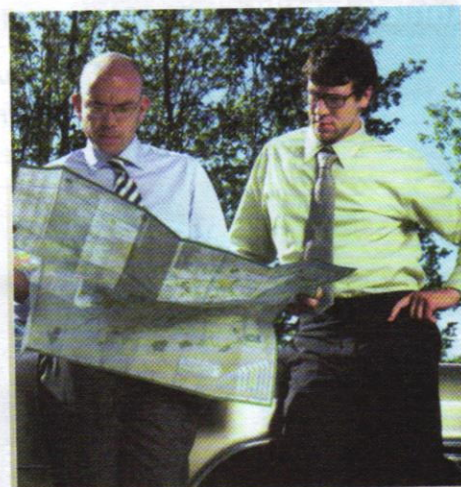
**kind    very much    OK**

- 4 G Thank you \_\_\_\_\_.  
That's very \_\_\_\_\_.  
H That's \_\_\_\_\_.



**don't understand    sorry**

- 5 I *Quelle heure est-il?*  
J I'm \_\_\_\_\_. I \_\_\_\_\_.



**don't know    Excuse**

- 6 K \_\_\_\_\_ me!  
Where's the town centre?  
L I'm sorry. I \_\_\_\_\_.

2 Complete the conversations with the words in the boxes.

**T 3.11** Listen again and check.

3 Work with a partner. Learn the conversations.  
Stand up! Act the conversations.





# 4

## Family and friends

our/their • Possessive 's • The family • has/have • The alphabet



### STARTER

1 Complete the chart.

I	you	he	she	we	they
my				our	their

2 Talk about things in the classroom.

This is my book.

This is our class.

This is her bag.

### MY FAMILY

Possessive 's

1 T 4.1 Read and listen.

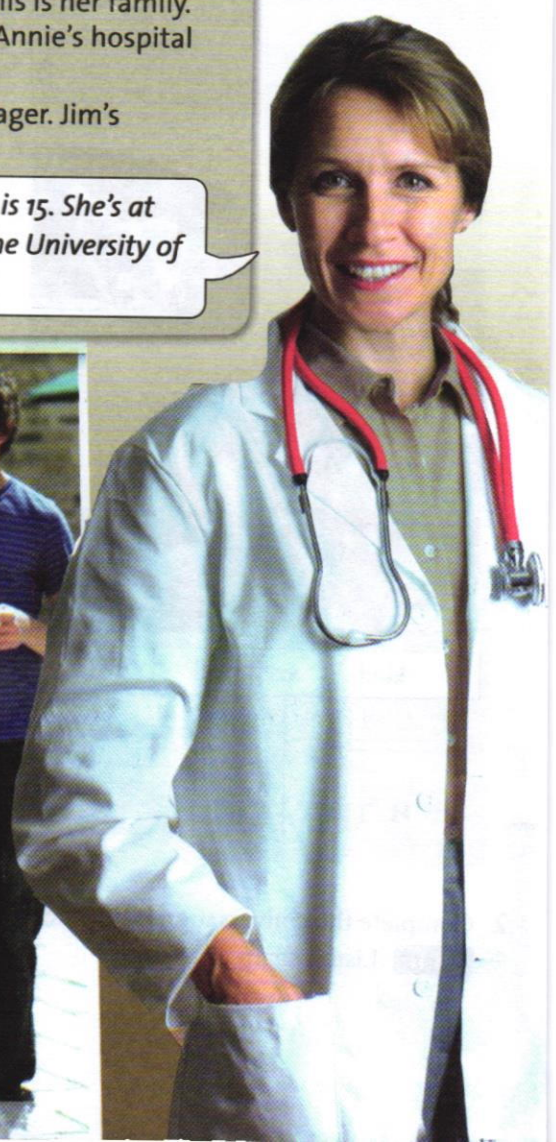
#### Annie's family

## ANNIE TAYLOR

This is Annie Taylor. She's married, and this is her family. Their house is in London. She's a doctor. Annie's hospital is in the centre of town.

Jim is Annie's husband. He's a bank manager. Jim's office is in the centre of town, too.

*'Our children are Emma and Vince. Emma is 15. She's at Camden High School. Vince is 19. He's at the University of Westminster. We're all happy in London.'*





## GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 She's married.     She's a doctor.     's = is
- 2 This is her family.  
This is **Annie's** family     's = the family of Annie
- 3 his     office     her     school  
Jim's     Emma's

▶▶ Grammar Reference 4.1–4.3 p124

### 2 Answer the questions.

- 1 Is Annie married? Yes, she is.
- 2 Where's their house? \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 What's Annie's job? \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Where's her hospital? \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 What's Jim's job? \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Are their children both at school? \_\_\_\_\_.

T 4.2 Listen, check, and practise.

### Annie's hospital

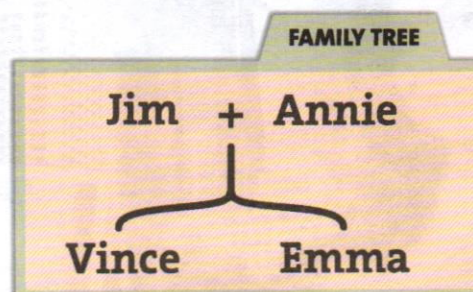


## Who are they?

3 T 4.3 Listen and repeat.

♀	mother	daughter	sister	wife
♂	father	son	brother	husband
👤👤	parents	children		

4 Look at the family tree.



T 4.4 Listen and complete the sentences.

- 1 Annie is Jim's wife.
- 2 Jim is Annie's \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Emma is Annie and Jim's \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Vince is their \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Annie is Vince's \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Jim is Emma's \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 Emma is Vince's \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 Vince is Emma's \_\_\_\_\_.
- 9 Annie and Jim are Emma and Vince's \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10 Emma and Vince are Jim and Annie's \_\_\_\_\_.

T 4.4 Listen again and check.

5 Ask and answer questions with a partner.

Who's Vince?

He's Emma's brother.

He's Jim's son.

6 T 4.5 Listen to the five people. Who are they?

- 1 Annie     Come on, Emma! Time for school!
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_



## PRACTICE

### An American family

- 1 **T 4.6** Listen to Michela Sacchi from Chicago.  
Complete the information about her family.

	Name	Age	Job
Michela's brother	Massimo		
Michela's mother			
Michela's father			



- 2 Complete the sentences.

- Massimo is Michela's brother.
- Her \_\_\_\_\_ name is Maria.
- 'What's \_\_\_\_\_ job?' 'He's a businessman.'
- 'Where's \_\_\_\_\_ house?' 'It's in Chicago.'

- 3 Write the names of people in your family.

John/Sara

Ask and answer questions with a partner.

Who's John/Sara?

He's/She's my brother/mother ...

How old is he/she?

He's/She's ...

What's his/her job?

He's/She's a ...

### my/our/your ...

- 4 Complete the sentences with *my, our, your, ...*

- 'What's your name?'  
'My name's Annie.'
- 'What are \_\_\_\_\_ names?'  
'Our names are Emma and Vince.'
- Jean-Paul and André are students.  
\_\_\_\_\_ school is in Paris.
- 'My sister's married.'  
'What's \_\_\_\_\_ husband's name?'
- 'My brother's office is in New York.'  
'What's \_\_\_\_\_ job?'
- We're in \_\_\_\_\_ English class.
- 'Mum and Dad are in Rome.'  
'What's the name of \_\_\_\_\_ hotel?'

- T 4.7** Listen and check.



## ANNIE'S BROTHER

has/have

- 1 **T 4.8** Look at the pictures. Read and listen to Paddy. Who are the people?
- 2 Are the sentences true (✓) or false (X)?
  - 1 ☒ Paddy's hotel is in England.  
*It isn't in England. It's in Ireland.*
  - 2 ☒ His wife has a job in a hospital.
  - 3 ☐ Annie is Paddy's wife.
  - 4 ☐ Their hotel is very big.
  - 5 ☐ Paddy and Shona have three children.
  - 6 ☐ All their sons are at university.
  - 7 ☐ Jim and Annie have a son and a daughter.

### GRAMMAR SPOT

Complete the forms of the verb *have*.

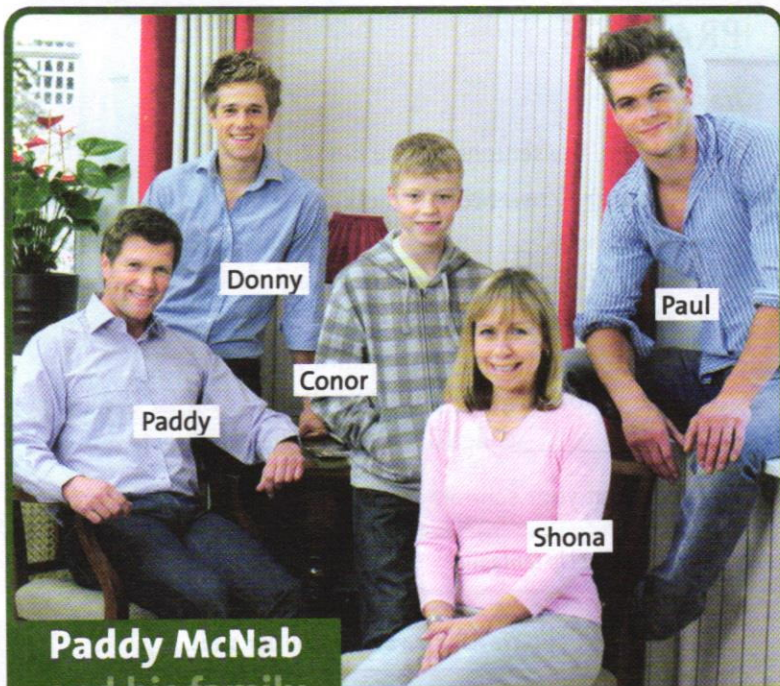
I have      We \_\_\_\_\_  
 You \_\_\_\_\_      They \_\_\_\_\_  
 He has      \_\_\_\_\_  
 She \_\_\_\_\_

▶▶ Grammar Reference 4.4 p124

- 3 **T 4.9** Listen and complete the sentences. Practise them.
  - 1 I have a small hotel in the city of Galway.
  - 2 \_\_\_\_\_ in town.
  - 3 \_\_\_\_\_ three sons.
  - 4 \_\_\_\_\_ an apartment in the hotel.
  - 5 \_\_\_\_\_ house in London.
- 4 Write sentences about your family. Tell the class.

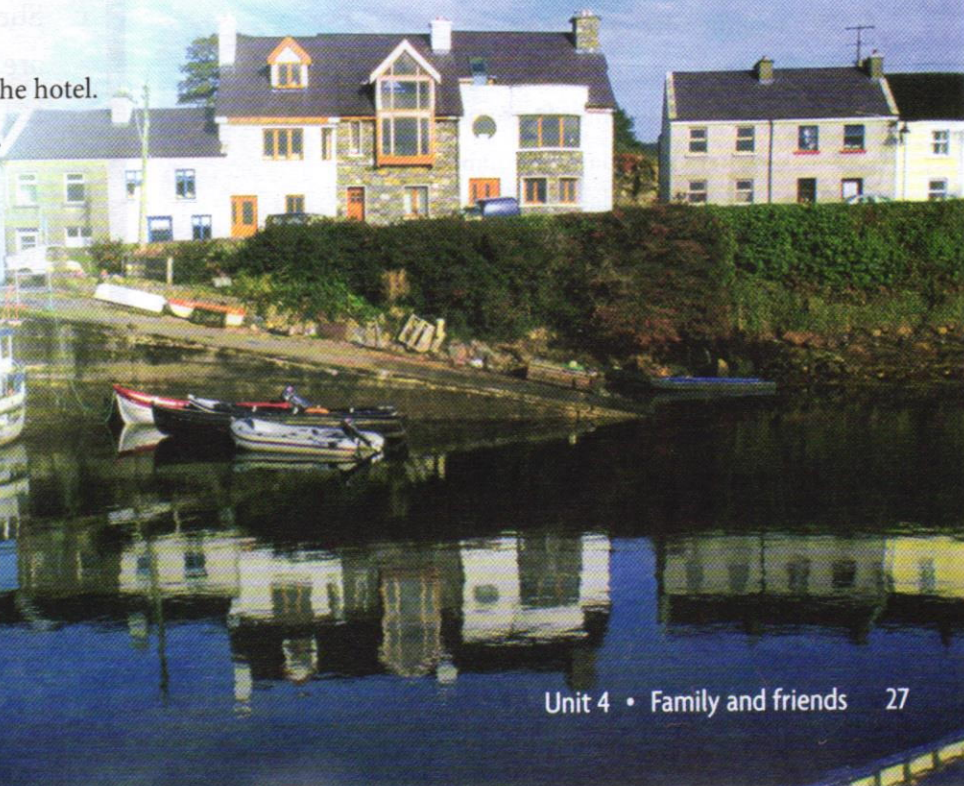
*We have a house in the centre of town.*

*I have two sisters.*



**Paddy McNab**  
and his family

"We're from Ireland. I have a small hotel in the town of Galway. My wife's name is Shona, and she has a job in town. She's a nurse. We have three sons, Paul, Donny, and Conor. We have an apartment in the hotel. Our sons Paul and Donny are students at the National University of Ireland, here in Galway. Our son Conor is only 13. He's still at school. My sister, Annie, and her husband, Jim, have a big house in London. They have two children, a son and a daughter. Jim has a very good job."





## PRACTICE

### has/have

- Complete the sentences. Use *has* or *have*.
  - I have two brothers and a sister.
  - My parents \_\_\_\_\_ a house in the country.
  - My wife \_\_\_\_\_ a Japanese car.
  - My sister and I \_\_\_\_\_ a cat.
  - You \_\_\_\_\_ a very nice family.
  - Our school \_\_\_\_\_ fifteen classrooms.
  - We \_\_\_\_\_ English classes in the evening.
- Talk about your school.

Our school is fantastic!

It has six classrooms.

We have ten students in our class.

### Questions and answers

- Match the questions and answers.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> How is your daughter? | a Smith.                                 |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> What's your sister's job?        | b He's a student from Madrid.            |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> How old are your children?       | c It's in the centre of town.            |
| 4 <input type="checkbox"/> Who is Pedro?                    | <del>d</del> She's very well, thank you. |
| 5 <input type="checkbox"/> Where's your office?             | e They're ten and thirteen.              |
| 6 <input type="checkbox"/> What's your surname?             | f She's a nurse.                         |

**T 4.10** Listen, check, and practise.

### Check it

- Tick (✓) the correct sentence.
  - ☒ Maryam's children are married.  
☐ Maryam is children are married.
  - ☐ What's your daughter name?  
☐ What's your daughter's name?
  - ☐ What's he's job?  
☐ What's his job?
  - ☐ They're from Germany.  
☐ Their from Germany.
  - ☐ They're parents have a house in Bonn.  
☐ Their parents have a house in Bonn.
  - ☐ My brother have a good job.  
☐ My brother has a good job.
  - ☐ We have a lovely teacher.  
☐ We has a lovely teacher.

## READING AND WRITING

### My best friend

- Read about Antonia. Check the new words in your dictionary.
- Match the photos with a part of the text. Who are the people in the photos?

## My friend Antonia

- My best friend's name is Antonia – Toni for short. She's very beautiful, and she's really funny. She's 18, and she's a student at university in London. She has a lot of friends and a great flatmate. Her name is Valerie, she's 19 and she's also at university.
- Toni is from the north of England. Her parents have a house in a village near Manchester. Her father is an accountant, and her mother has a part-time job in a bank.
- She has a brother and a sister. Their names are Mark and Alison. Mark is 16 and Alison is 14. They're both at school.
- Toni has a lot of clothes. Her favourite designer is Anna Sui, and her favourite shop is *Top Shop*. She likes shopping. She and Alison like shopping a lot. She also likes football. She and her brother, Mark, are big Manchester United fans.

When we're together, we have a really good time.





### 3 Underline the correct information.

- 1 Toni is ... a student / a nurse / funny / beautiful / married.
- 2 Toni has ... two sisters / a brother / a husband / a flatmate / a lot of clothes.
- 3 Valerie is ... Toni's brother / Toni's flatmate / great / an accountant.
- 4 Mark is ... Toni's brother / Toni's flatmate / a Manchester United fan / at school.
- 5 Toni's parents have ... a house / an apartment / one daughter / three children.
- 6 Toni likes ... Top Shop / shopping / football / Valerie.

### 4 T 4.11 Listen to the people. Who are they?

- 1 Toni Look at these shoes, Alison! They're fantastic!
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ 6 \_\_\_\_\_ 7 \_\_\_\_\_ 8 \_\_\_\_\_

### 5 Work with a partner. Talk about Toni.

Toni's a student. She's very ...

### Writing

- 6 Write about a good friend – his/her family, job, favourite shop and sport, ...

My friend's name is ...

Her/His parents ... She's/He's ...

Her/His favourite ... She/He has ...

She/He likes ...

Read it to a partner.



# EVERYDAY ENGLISH

## The alphabet



- 1 Look at the letters of the alphabet.

**T 4.12** Listen. Practise them.

- 2 **T 4.13** Listen and practise the groups of letters.

/eɪ/ a h j k	/əʊ/ o
/i:/ b c d e g p t v	/u:/ q u w
/e/ f l m n s x z	/ɑ:/ r
/aɪ/ i y	

### How do you spell ... ?

- 3 **T 4.14** Listen to people spell their first name (*Annie*) and their surname (*Taylor*). Write the names.

1 ANNIE TAYLOR  
 2 \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 \_\_\_\_\_

- 4 Practise spelling your name with a partner.

How do you spell your first name?

A-N-T-O-N-I-A

How do you spell your surname?

D-O-W-N-I-N-G

- 5 Work with a partner. Ask and answer *How do you spell ... ?* with words from the text about Antonia on p28.

How do you spell 'friend'?

F-R-I-E-N-D

- 6 Put the letters in the correct order. What's the country?

NEFACR	<u>FRANCE</u>
ABYLI	_____
RNLAIED	_____
NAPAJ	_____
LASARUTAI	_____
AYRSI	_____
GANELDN	_____

- 7 Read the letters aloud. What are they?

<b>DVD</b>	<b>UK</b>	<b>KSA</b>
<b>BBC</b>	<b>US</b>	<b>PC</b>
<b>WWW</b>	<b>UAE</b>	<b>TV</b>

**T 4.15** Listen and check.



## On the phone

- 1 **T 4.16** Listen to two phone conversations and look at the business cards.

### Conversation 1

- A Good morning. Laxcon International.  
 H Hello. The Manager, please.  
 A Certainly. And your name is?  
 H Hamid Al-Habsi.  
 A How do you spell your surname?  
 H A - L - (-) - H - A - B - S - I.  
 A Thank you. I'm connecting you.  
 ...  
 S Hello. Sam Benting speaking.  
 H Good morning, Mr Benting. My name's ...

### Premier IT Solutions

PO Box 1816, Ruwi, Muscat PC 112, Sultanate of Oman

**Hamid Al-Habsi**  
**Export Manager**

Tel (968) 24512208

Fax (968) 24512209

GSM (968) 96260432

### Conversation 2

- B Good afternoon. The King School of English.  
 M Hello. Can you give me some information about your school, please?  
 B Of course. Your name is?  
 M Mayumi Morioka.  
 B Mayumi ... Sorry, how do you spell your surname?  
 M M - O - R - I - O - K - A.  
 B Thank you. What's your email address?  
 M It's morioka@mmdesign.co.jp.  
 B I'll email you some information today.  
 M Thank you very much. Goodbye.

**TOHUKU design** **MAYUMI morioka**

**Address**  
 2-21-10 #204 Akasaka Building  
 Sendagaya Shibuya-ku  
 Tokyo 1510051  
 JAPAN

**Phone** +81-3-5414-6443  
**Fax** +81-3-5414-6444  
**Email** morioka@mmdesign.co.jp  
**http://**tohukudesign.co.jp

- 2 **T 4.16** Listen again and answer the questions.

- 1 What company is he/she phoning?
- 2 What does he/she want?
- 3 How do you spell his/her surname?
- 4 What's his/her email address?

Practise the conversations.

### Email addresses

- 3 Notice how we say email addresses.

@ at

. dot

com /kɒm/

co /kəʊ/

uk /ju: 'keɪ/ (United Kingdom)

ca /si: eɪ/ (Canada)

.it .kw

.jp .fr

wanadoo

- 4 **T 4.17** Listen and complete the email addresses.

1 pam \_\_\_\_\_@btinternet\_\_\_\_\_

2 harrylime\_\_\_\_\_

3 paul\_\_\_\_\_wanadoo\_\_\_\_\_

What's your email address? Tell a partner.

hotmail  
 btinternet  
 yahoo  
 .ly

### Roleplay

- 5 Write your business card.  
 Have conversations with a partner.  
 Phone the bank / a hotel / a sports centre ...

_____ company name	
name:	_____
address:	_____
tel:	_____ fax: _____
email:	_____



# 5

## The way I live

Sports/Food/Drinks • Present Simple – I/you/we/they • a/an  
Languages and nationalities • Numbers and prices



### STARTER

1 Match the words and pictures.

football burger skiing milk Chinese food tennis pizza oranges  
cola tea swimming ice-cream coffee Indian food juice

### SPORTS



1 tennis



2



3



4

### FOOD



5



6



7



8



9



10

### DRINKS



11



12



13



14



15

T 5.1 Listen and repeat.

2 Tick (✓) the things you like. ☺ Cross (X) the things you don't like. ☹

### THINGS I LIKE

Present Simple

1 T 5.2 Listen and repeat.

☺ I like ice-cream.



☺ I like football.



Say three things *you* like from pictures 1–15.

I like swimming, pizza, and juice.



## Negatives

- 3 **T 5.3** Listen and repeat.

☹ I don't like tennis.



☹ I don't like coffee.



- 4 Say three things *you* don't like from pictures 1–15 on p32.

I don't like oranges, coffee, or tea.

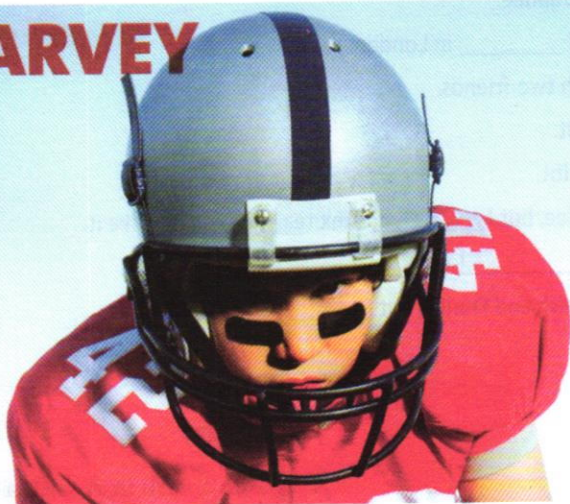
### GRAMMAR SPOT

**Positive** I like ice-cream.

**Negative** I don't like tennis. **don't** = do not

- 5 **T 5.4** Listen to Harvey. Complete his sentences.

**HARVEY**



### SPORTS

'I like sports a lot. I like \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ but I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ and I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ very much.'

### FOOD AND DRINK

'I like burgers and \_\_\_\_\_. And I like \_\_\_\_\_ food a lot. But I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ food and I don't like \_\_\_\_\_. I like \_\_\_\_\_ and I love \_\_\_\_\_.'

## Questions I, you, we, they

- 6 **T 5.5** Listen and repeat.

Do you like football? Yes, I do.

Do you like tennis? No, I don't.

?

- 7 Work with a partner. Ask and answer about sports, food, and drinks.

Do you like football?

Yes, I do.

Do you like tennis?

No, I don't, but I like swimming.

- 8 **T 5.6** Harvey has a twin sister, Eva. Listen to them. What do they like? (✓) What don't they like? (X) What do they say? Write the adjectives.



**exciting**  
**delicious**  
**great**  
**fantastic**  
**awful**



**HARVEY** **EVA**

1 pizza	✓	✓	<u>delicious</u>
2 ice-cream	—	—	_____
3 tea	—	—	_____
4 skiing	—	—	_____
5 football	—	—	_____

- 9 Talk about Harvey and Eva with a partner. What do they like?

They like pizza and ...

### GRAMMAR SPOT

**Positive** I/You/We/They like football.

**Question** What do you/they like?  
Do you/they like ...?

**Short answers** Yes, I/we/they do.  
No, I/we/they don't.

►► Grammar Reference 5.1 p125



## PRACTICE

### Reading and speaking

1 Look at the pictures. What's Colin's job?

**T 5.7** Read and listen to the text.

### COLIN BRODIE FROM DUNDEE

'Hello! My name's Colin Brodie. I come from Dundee in Scotland, but now I live and work in London. I have a very small flat near the centre. I live there with two friends. I'm a waiter and I'm also a student. I work part-time in an Italian restaurant. I eat Italian food and I drink Italian coffee after dinner. I speak two languages – Spanish and French, but I don't speak Italian. And I don't play sports. I want to be an engineer.'



2 **T 5.8** Listen to the conversation with Colin. Complete his answers.

#### Questions

- Where do you come from?
- Do you live in Dundee?
- Do you live with friends?
- Where do you work?
- Do you like Italian food?
- Do you drink Italian coffee?
- Do you like your job?
- Do you speak Italian?

#### Colin's answers

- I come from Scotland, from Dundee.
- No, I don't. I \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ in London.
- Yes, I do. I \_\_\_\_\_ with two friends.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ in an Italian restaurant.
- Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_. I \_\_\_\_\_ it a lot.
- Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_. I \_\_\_\_\_ coffee, but I \_\_\_\_\_ drink tea. I \_\_\_\_\_ like it.
- No, I \_\_\_\_\_. I want to be \_\_\_\_\_.
- No, I \_\_\_\_\_. I \_\_\_\_\_ Spanish and French, but I \_\_\_\_\_ speak Italian.

**T 5.8** Listen again and check. Practise the questions.

3 Ask and answer the questions with a partner. Give *true* answers about *you*.

#### GRAMMAR SPOT

##### a or an?

a small flat    an engineer    a waiter    an Italian restaurant

Write a or an.

\_\_\_ ice-cream    \_\_\_ orange    \_\_\_ student    \_\_\_ English car    \_\_\_ computer

►► Grammar Reference 5.2 p125

#### Vocabulary

4 Match a verb in A with a line in B.

A	B
have	Lebanese food
live	sports
work	in a flat
come	two brothers
eat	in a bank
drink	from Japan
play	to be a millionaire
speak	coffee
want	Arabic





## Listening and speaking

5 **T 5.9** Listen to three conversations.

Where is Colin? Who says these lines?

- 1 *Bye, Colin. See you later.*
- 2 *I work late on Fridays.*
- 3 *Do you want to order?*
- 4 *Do you have a list?*
- 5 *I like your food the best.*
- 6 *Do you want to speak to your brother?*

Look at **T 5.9** on p114. Practise the conversations in groups of three.

## Talking about you

6 Work with a partner. Complete the questions, then ask and answer them about you.

- 1 Where \_\_\_\_\_ you come from?
- 2 Do you \_\_\_\_\_ in a house or a flat?
- 3 Where \_\_\_\_\_ you work?
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ you like your work?
- 5 How many languages \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_?
- 6 Do you \_\_\_\_\_ Lebanese food?
- 7 What \_\_\_\_\_ do you play?
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ to be a millionaire?

## Check it

7 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

- 1 ☐ Live you in Abu Dhabi?  
☐ Do you live in Abu Dhabi?
- 2 ☐ Where do you come from?  
☐ Where you come from?
- 3 ☐ Do you speak Arabic?  
☐ Are you speak Arabic?
- 4 ☐ I don't speak Chinese.  
☐ I no speak Chinese.
- 5 ☐ 'Do you like football?' 'Yes, I like.'  
☐ 'Do you like football?' 'Yes, I do.'
- 6 ☐ He's a engineer.  
☐ He's an engineer.



# VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

## Languages and nationalities

1 Match the countries and nationalities.

England	Japanese
Germany	French
Italy	English
Mexico	American
Syria	Chinese
Japan	Italian
Portugal	Syrian
China	Mexican
France	German
the United States	Portuguese
Saudi Arabia	Saudi Arabian

**T 5.10** Listen and repeat.

2 What nationality are the people in the pictures, do you think?

*I think they're Italian.*

*Well, I think they're Omani.*

3 Match the countries and the languages to make true sentences.

*In Portugal they speak Portuguese.*

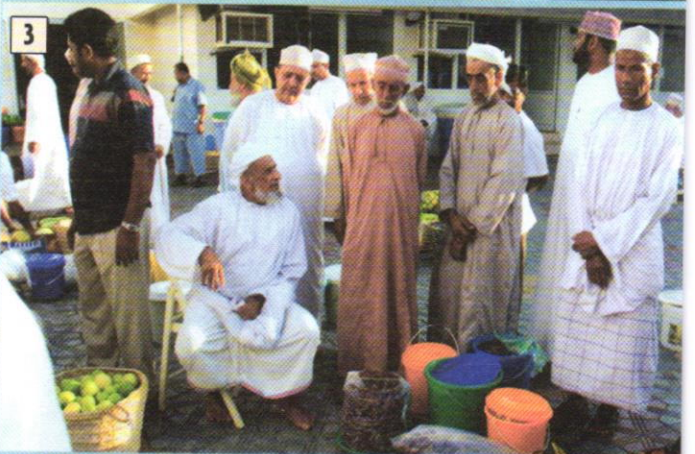
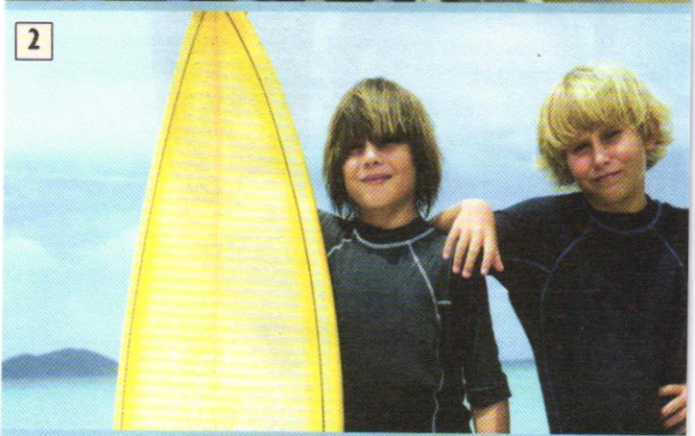
Portugal	German
Canada	Italian
France	Japanese
Germany	Portuguese
Italy	Spanish
Japan	English
Mexico	Turkish
Libya	French
Turkey	Russian
Russia	Arabic

**T 5.11** Listen and check.

4 Ask and answer questions with a partner.

*What language do they speak in Portugal?*

*Portuguese.*





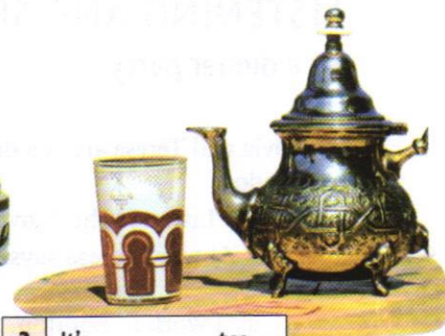
## Adjective + noun

5 What is it? Where's it from?

1 It's a \_\_\_\_\_ car.



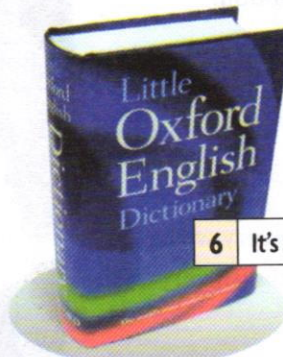
2 It's \_\_\_\_\_ tea.



3 They're \_\_\_\_\_ oranges.



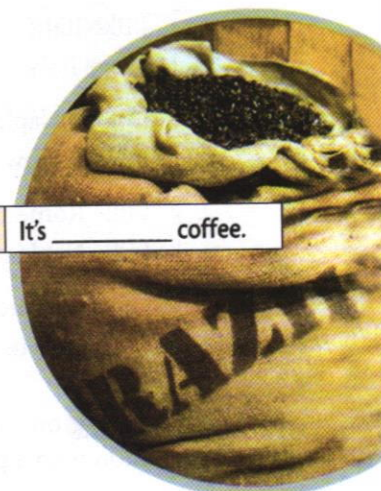
6 It's an \_\_\_\_\_ dictionary.



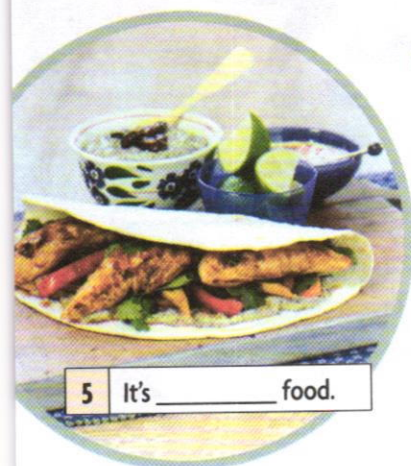
4 It's a \_\_\_\_\_ camera.



8 It's \_\_\_\_\_ coffee.



5 It's \_\_\_\_\_ food.



7 It's an \_\_\_\_\_ bag.



9 It's \_\_\_\_\_ water.



**T 5.12** Listen and check. Practise the sentences.

6 Write sentences about you. Use the verbs *have*, *eat*, and *drink*.

*I drink Moroccan tea, but I don't drink French water.*

7 Write questions. Ask and answer with a partner.

Do you have an American car?

Yes, I do.

No, I don't. I have a German car.

Do you drink Moroccan tea?

Yes, I do.

No, I don't. I don't drink tea. I don't like it.

### GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Adjectives come before the noun.

a **Japanese** camera

**French** water NOT water-French

2 We don't add -s to the adjective.

**Spanish** oranges NOT Spanish~~s~~ oranges

**blue** jeans NOT blue~~s~~ jeans

►► Grammar Reference 5.3 p125



## LISTENING AND SPEAKING

### At a dinner party

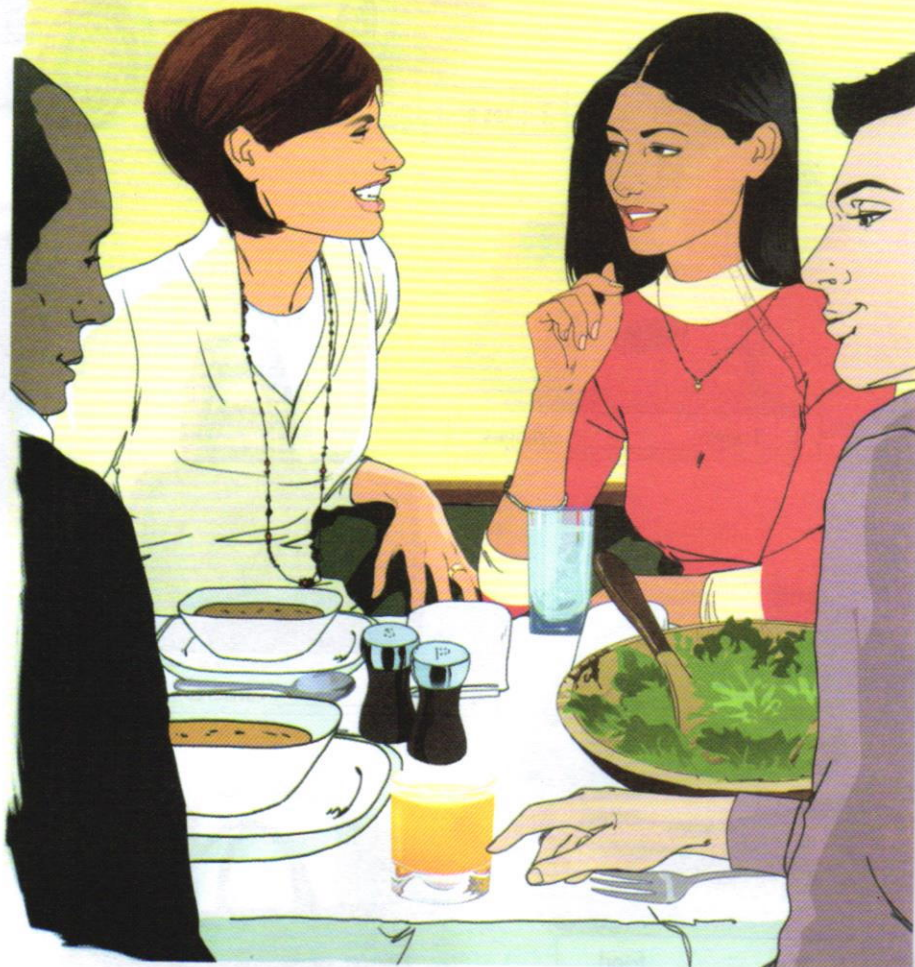
- 1 Flavia and Teresa are at a dinner party in London.

**T 5.13** Listen to the conversation.

Tick (✓) what Teresa says.

- 1 ☐ I work in London.  
☐ I don't work in London.
- 2 ☐ I live in London.  
☐ I don't live in London.
- 3 ☐ I'm a doctor.  
☐ I'm an engineer.
- 4 ☐ You speak English very well.  
☐ You don't speak English very well.
- 5 ☐ I like Italy.  
☐ I love Italy.
- 6 ☐ I know Naples very well.  
☐ I don't know Naples.
- 7 ☐ I like Rome very much.  
☐ I like Naples very much, too.
- 8 ☐ I speak French and Italian.  
☐ I don't speak Italian.

- 2 Look at **T 5.13** on p115. Practise the conversation with a partner.



### Roleplay

- 3 You are at a dinner party. Work with a partner. What are the questions?

- Hello! What's...?
- Where... live?
- ... you have a house or a flat?
- What... job?
- Where... work?
- How many languages... speak?
- What sports... you like?

- 4 Think of a new identity. Make notes to answer the questions in exercise 3.

- 5 Find out about other people at the dinner party.

James Bond ...  
In Rio, Beijing, and London...  
Three very big apartments...  
A spy... All over the world...  
Six - French,...  
Skiing,...





# EVERYDAY ENGLISH

## How much is it?

1 Count from 1-30 round the class.

2 T 5.14 Listen and repeat.

10 ten    20 twenty    30 thirty    40 forty    50 fifty    60 sixty  
70 seventy    80 eighty    90 ninety    100 one hundred

Count to 100 in tens round the class.

3 Work with a partner.

Student A

Write some numbers.  
Say them to your partner.

thirty-two ...  
forty-five ...

Student B

Write the numbers you hear.  
32 45 ...

4 T 5.15 Read and listen to the prices. Practise them.

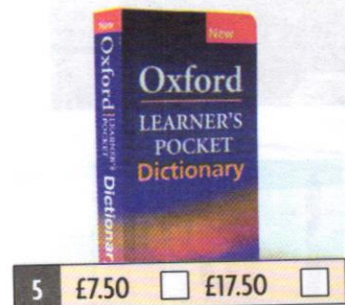
30p thirty p /pi:/    50p fifty p    75p seventy-five p    £1 one pound    £20 twenty pounds  
£75 seventy-five pounds    £1.60 one pound sixty    £3.45 three pounds forty-five    £22.80 twenty-two pounds eighty

5 Say the prices.

60p    97p    £17    £70    £25    £1.50    £16.80    £40.75    £26.99    \$20    \$50    \$100

T 5.16 Listen and check.

6 T 5.17 Listen and tick (✓) the prices you hear.



7 Ask and answer questions about the pictures with a partner.

How much is the cheese sandwich?

£2.90





# 6

## Every day

The time • Present Simple – *he/she* • *always/sometimes/never*  
Words that go together • Days of the week

### STARTER

1 **T 6.1** Listen and repeat. Write the times.



1 It's nine o'clock.



2 It's nine thirty.



3 It's nine forty-five.



4 It's ten o'clock.



5 It's ten fifteen.



6



7



8



9

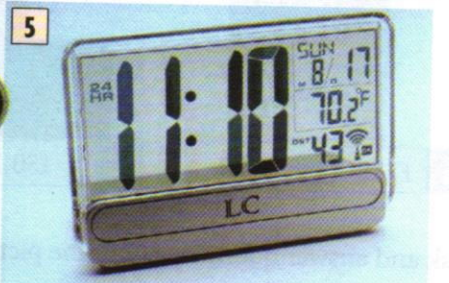
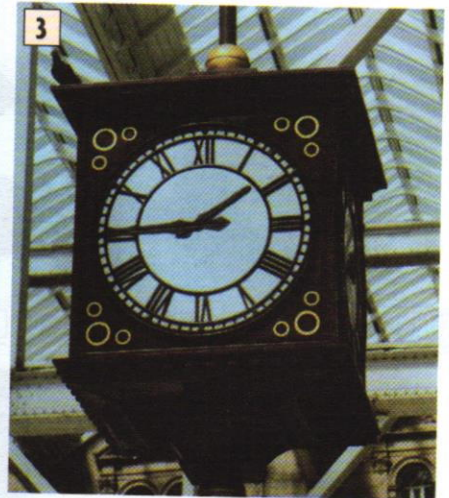
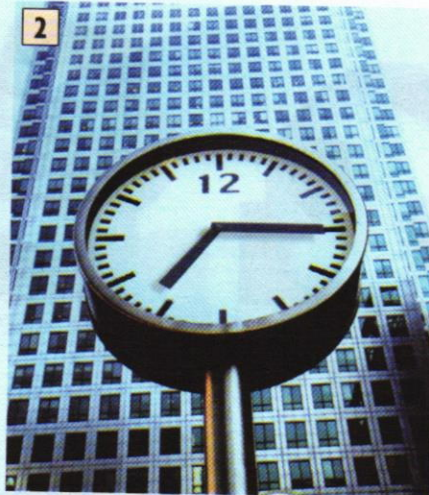
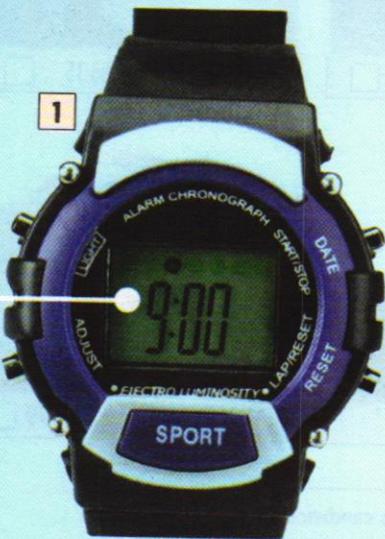


10

2 **T 6.2** Listen to the conversation.

- A What time is it, please?  
B It's nine o'clock.  
A Thank you very much.

Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about the time.

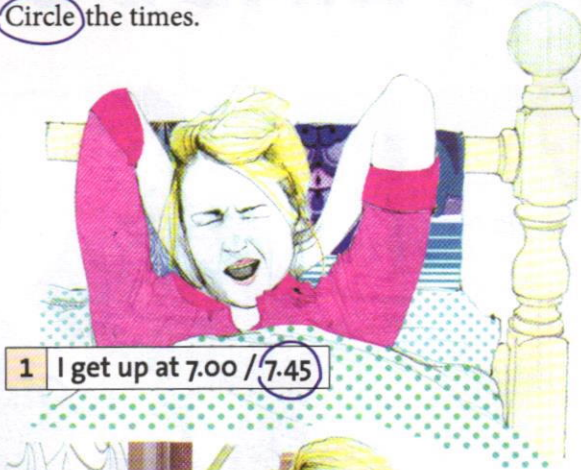




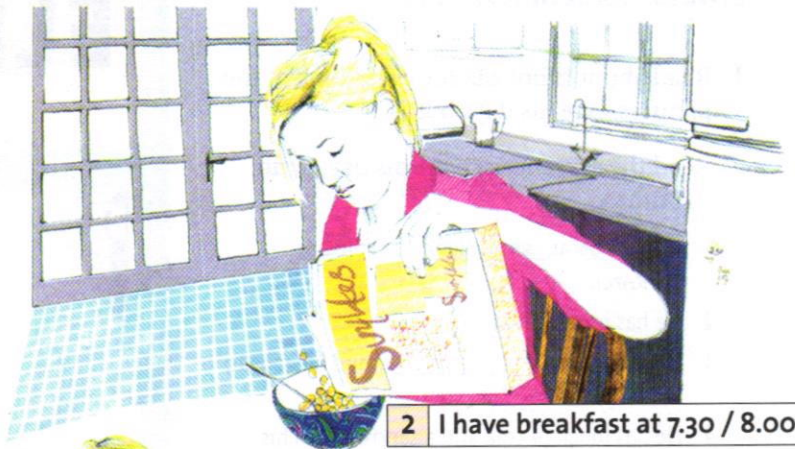
# WHAT TIME DO YOU GET UP?

Present Simple – I / you

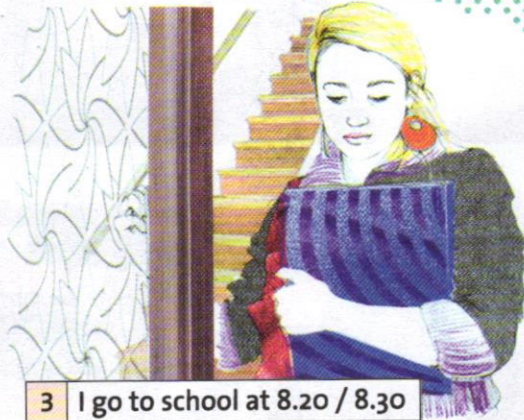
- 1 **T 6.3** Listen to Kim talking about her schooldays.  
Circle the times.



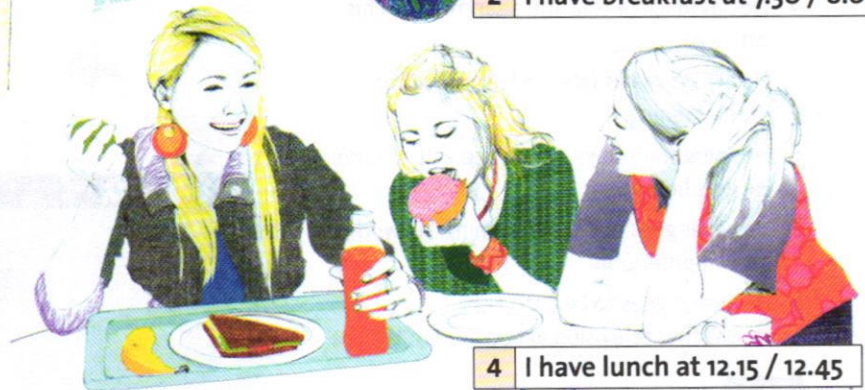
1 I get up at 7.00 / **7.45**



2 I have breakfast at 7.30 / 8.00



3 I go to school at 8.20 / 8.30



4 I have lunch at 12.15 / 12.45



5 I leave school at 3.30 / 4.15



6 I get home at 4.30 / 4.45



7 I go to bed at 11.00 / 11.30

**T 6.3** Listen again. Practise the sentences.

- 2 Work with a partner. Talk about your day.

*I get up at 7.30. I have breakfast at ...*

- 3 **T 6.4** Listen and repeat the questions.

What time do you get up?

What time do you have breakfast?



- 4 Work with another partner.  
Ask and answer questions about your day.

What time do you go to work?

I go to work at 8.15.



## ELLIOT'S DAY

Present Simple – *he/she*  
*always/sometimes/never*

1 Read about Elliot Maddox and look at the pictures. Are his days busy?

2 Read the sentences about his day. Write the times.

- 1 He gets up at six o'clock and he has a shower.
- 2 He has breakfast at \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 He leaves home at \_\_\_\_\_ and he goes to work by taxi.
- 4 He has lunch (a cola and a sandwich) in his office at \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 He always works late. He leaves work at \_\_\_\_\_ in the evening.
- 6 He sometimes buys a pizza and eats it at home. He gets home at \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 He never goes out in the evening. He works at his computer until \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 He always goes to bed at \_\_\_\_\_.  
He watches television in bed.

**T 6.5** Listen and check.

### GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Underline the verbs in sentences 1–8.

gets up      has

What's the last letter?

**T 6.6** Listen and repeat.

2 Look at the adverbs.

100% ——— 50% ——— 0%

always      sometimes      never

Find *always*, *sometimes*, and *never* in 1–8.

**T 6.7** Listen and repeat.

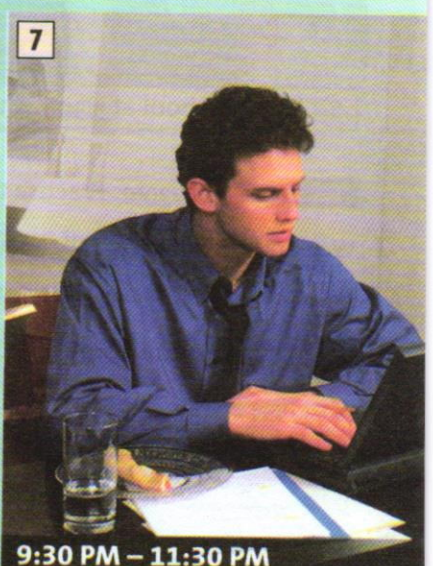
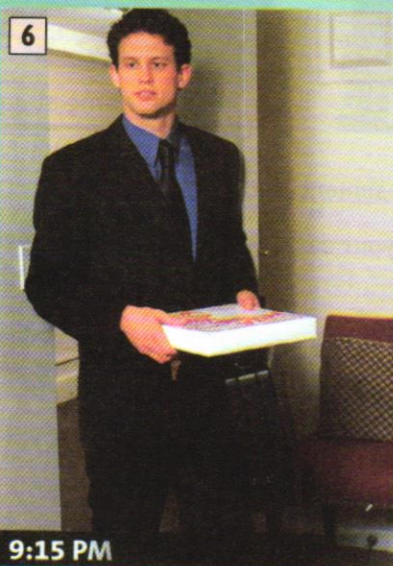
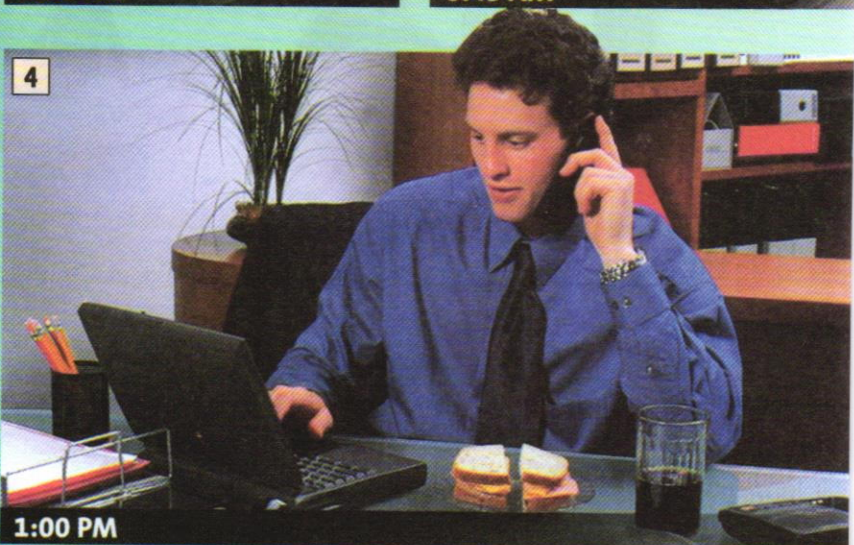
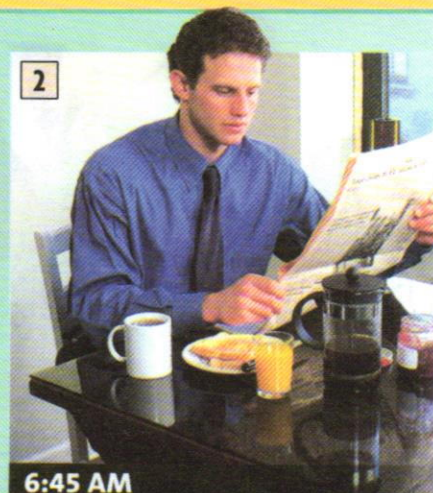
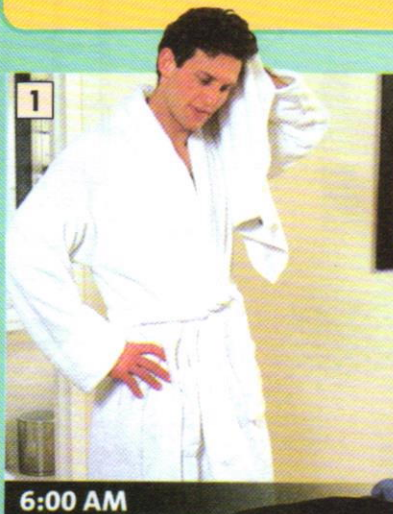
►► Grammar Reference 6.1–6.3 p125

### Pronunciation

3 **T 6.8** Listen to the pronunciation of -s at the end of the verbs. Practise the verbs.

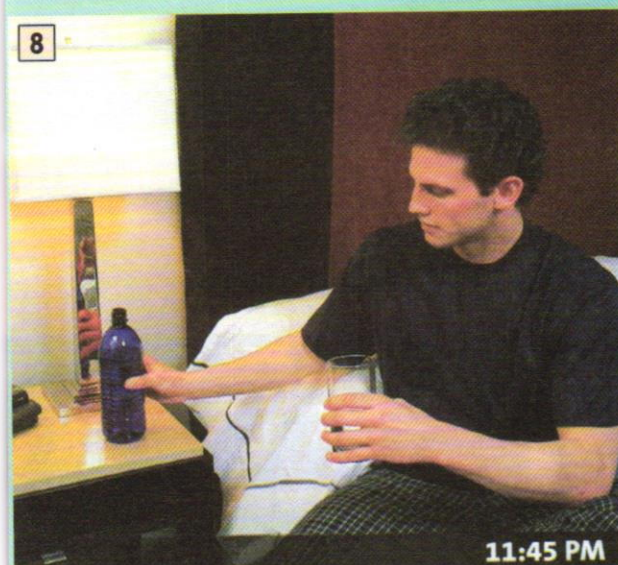
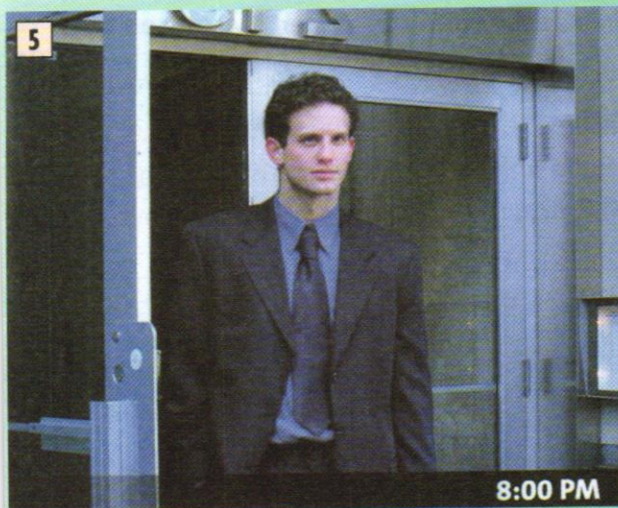
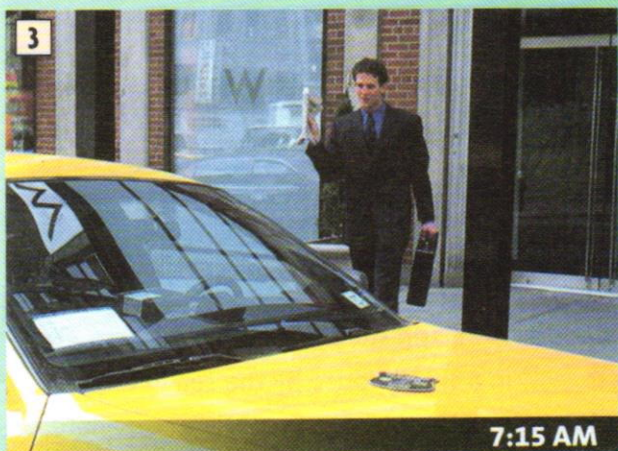
/s/	/z/	/ɪz/
gets up	lives	leaves
works	has	buys
eats	goes	does
		watches

# A DAY IN THE LIFE OF ELLIOT MADDOX





ELLIOT lives in New York. He's 22, and a computer millionaire. He's the director of **netstore24-7.com**, a shopping site on the Internet. This is a typical day for him.



## Questions and negatives

4 Read the questions. Complete the answers.

- What time **does** he **get up**?  
He \_\_\_\_\_ at 6.00.
- When **does** he **go to bed**?  
He \_\_\_\_\_ to bed at 11.45.
- Does** he **go to work** by taxi?  
\_\_\_\_\_, he **does**.
- Does** he **have lunch** in a restaurant?  
\_\_\_\_\_, he **doesn't**.
- Does** he **go out** in the evening?  
No, he \_\_\_\_\_.

T 6.9 Listen and check. Practise the questions and answers.

### GRAMMAR SPOT

- Positive** He **gets up** at 6.00.  
He **has** breakfast at 6.45.
- Negative** He **doesn't have** lunch.  
He **doesn't go** to bed late. **doesn't** = does not
- Question** What time **does** he **have** breakfast?  
**Does** he **work** late? Yes, he **does**./No, he **doesn't**.

►► Grammar Reference 6.4 p125

5 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about Elliot's day.

- When/leave home?
- Does/go to work by bus?
- Where/have lunch?
- Does/usually work late?
- Does/eat in a restaurant?
- What/do in the evening?

When does he leave home?

He leaves home at ...

T 6.10 Listen and check.

6 Write negative sentences.

- live/London He **doesn't live** in London.
- drive to work
- work in a bank
- have a lot of friends
- go to bed late

7 Complete the chart in the Present Simple.

	Positive	Negative	Question
I	work		Do I work?
You			
He/She	works		Does she work?
We		don't work	
They			



## PRACTICE

### Lois's day

- 1 Elliot Maddox has a sister, Lois. Her day is different. Look at the pictures. What does she do?

Read and complete the text with the verbs.

cooks	eats	gets	gets up
goes (x2)	has (x2)	invites	listens to
lives	phones	plays	works

# Lois Maddox

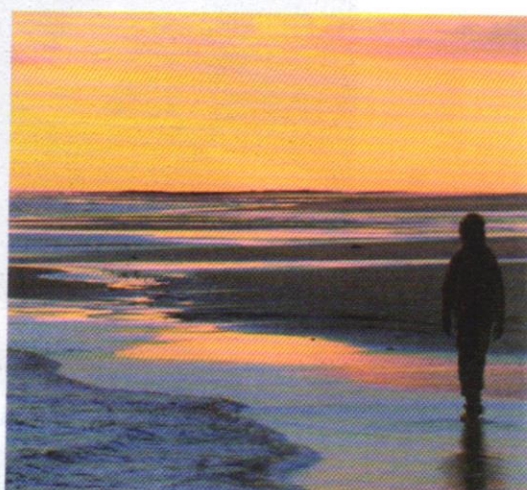
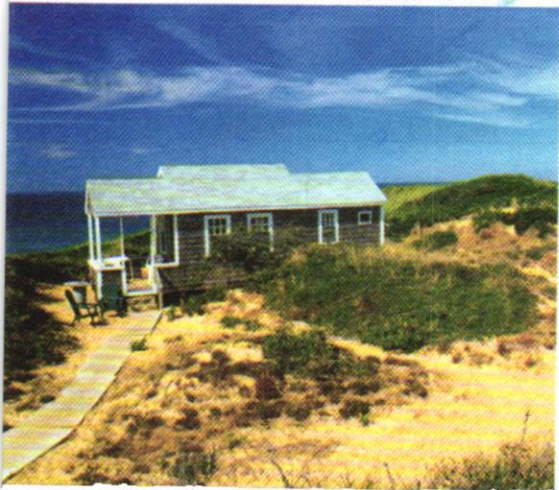
The seaside artist fills her day with work, walks, and friends.

Lois Maddox is 25 and she's an artist. She (1) lives in a small house by the sea in Cape Cod, Massachusetts. She always (2) \_\_\_\_\_ late, at ten o'clock in the morning. She (3) \_\_\_\_\_ a big breakfast – coffee, eggs, and toast – and then she (4) \_\_\_\_\_ to the beach.

When she (5) \_\_\_\_\_ home, she (6) \_\_\_\_\_ in her studio until seven o'clock in the evening. She never (7) \_\_\_\_\_ lunch, but she always (8) \_\_\_\_\_ a big dinner, and she often (9) \_\_\_\_\_ friends.

After dinner, she usually (10) \_\_\_\_\_ the radio or (11) \_\_\_\_\_ chess. Sometimes she (12) \_\_\_\_\_ her brother, Elliot, in New York. She (13) \_\_\_\_\_ to bed very late, at one or two o'clock in the morning.

**T 6.11** Listen and check.





3 Are these sentences about Lois or Elliot? Write *He* or *She*.

- |                               |                            |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 <u>He</u> 's a millionaire. | 5 _____ doesn't eat lunch. |
| 2 _____ 's an artist.         | 6 _____ doesn't cook.      |
| 3 _____ lives by the sea.     | 7 _____ cooks for friends. |
| 4 _____ gets up very early.   | 8 _____ loves computers.   |

Practise the sentences.

4 **T 6.12** Listen and complete the phone conversation between Lois and her brother Elliot.

**Lois** Hi, Elliot, how are you?

**Elliot** I'm fine, thanks. Busy as usual.

**L** Oh, you're \_\_\_\_\_ busy. You and your computers!

**E** I know, but I \_\_\_\_\_ my work.

**L** I love my work, \_\_\_\_\_, but I relax \_\_\_\_\_.

**E** Huh! I don't know about that. You paint all day!

**L** Yes, but I stop in the \_\_\_\_\_. You \_\_\_\_\_ stop!

**E** That's not true. Hey Lois, how's Aunt Nancy?

**L** Aunt Nancy? She's OK. You know, Elliot, Aunt Nancy often \_\_\_\_\_ about you.

**E** Really? I like Aunt Nancy.

**L** Well, come and \_\_\_\_\_ me soon. I want to cook for you and Aunt Nancy.

**E** Good idea! What about next \_\_\_\_\_? Next Sunday?

**L** Yes, great! I \_\_\_\_\_ invite Aunt Nancy at the weekend.

**E** Great. See you \_\_\_\_\_ Sunday. Have a good week!

**T 6.12** Listen again and check. Practise the conversation with a partner.

### Negatives and pronunciation

5 Correct the sentences about Lois and Elliot.

1 She lives in a flat.

She doesn't live in a flat! She lives in a house!

2 He gets up at ten o'clock.

3 She's a businesswoman.

4 He goes to work by bus.

5 She watches television in the evening.

**T 6.13** Listen and check. Notice the sentence stress. Practise with a partner.

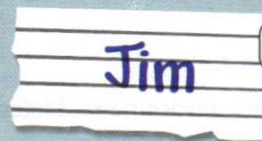
### Talking about you

6 Work with a partner. Write the names of two people in your family. Ask and answer questions about them.



Who's she?

She's my aunt.



Who's he?

He's my dad.

- Who is ...?
- How old is ...?
- What's ... job?
- Where does ... live?
- Where does ... work?
- What time does she/he ...?
- Does she/he have ...?

### Check it

7 Complete the questions and answers with *do*, *don't*, *does*, or *doesn't*.

1 '\_\_\_\_\_ you like ice-cream?'  
'Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_.'

2 '\_\_\_\_\_ she work in London?'  
'Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_.'

3 'Where \_\_\_\_\_ he work?'  
'In a bank.'

4 '\_\_\_\_\_ you go to work by bus?'  
'No, I \_\_\_\_\_.'

5 '\_\_\_\_\_ she go to bed early?'  
'No, she \_\_\_\_\_.'

6 '\_\_\_\_\_ they have a pet?'  
'Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_.'

7 '\_\_\_\_\_ he speak German?'  
'No, he \_\_\_\_\_.'

8 '\_\_\_\_\_ they live in Kuwait?'  
'No, they \_\_\_\_\_.'



## VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

### Words that go together

1 Match a verb in A with words in B.

T 6.14 Listen and check.

A	B
get up	dinner
go	early
listen to	TV
watch	in an office
cook	the radio
work	to bed late

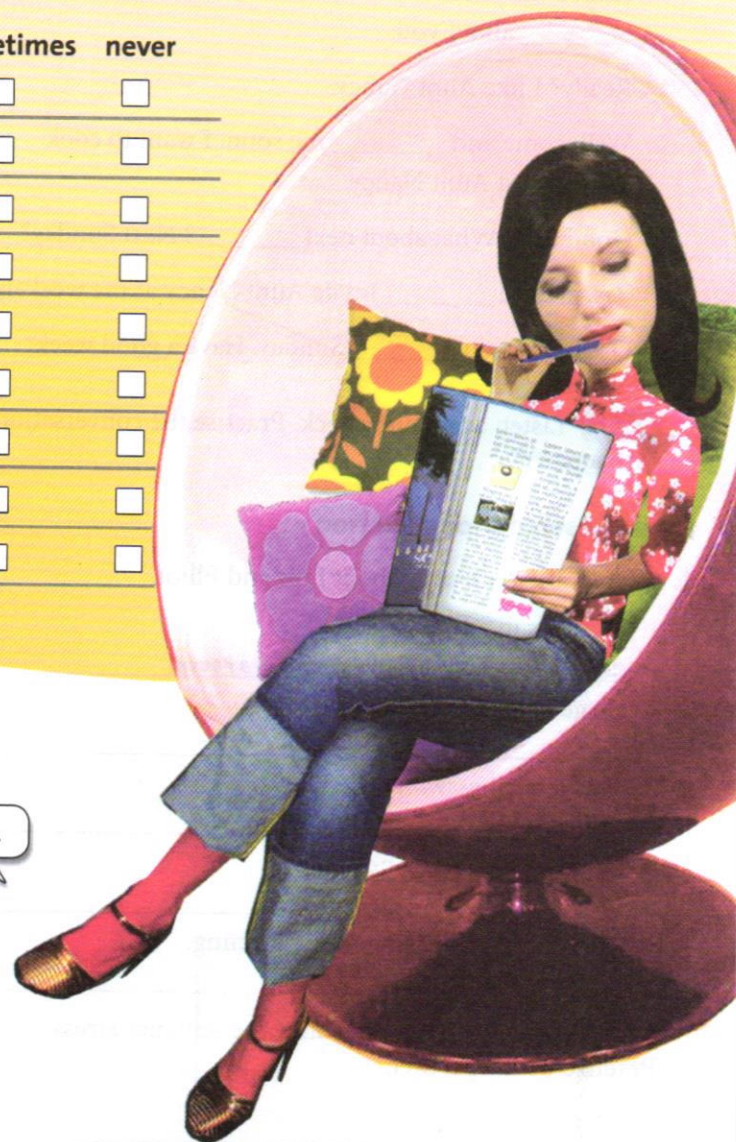
A	B
go	in restaurants
drink	chess
eat	coffee
have	shopping
play	at home
stay	a shower

2 T 6.15 Look at the questionnaire. Listen and repeat the questions.

# *lifestyle* questionnaire

### Do you ...?

	always	usually	sometimes	never
1 get up early	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2 have a big breakfast	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3 walk to school/work	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4 go to school/work by bus	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5 watch TV in the evening	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6 go shopping at the weekend	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7 eat in restaurants	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8 drink coffee	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9 go to bed late	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>



3 Ask a partner the questions and complete the questionnaire. Tick (✓) the correct boxes.

Do you ...?

Yes, usually.

Yes, sometimes.

No, never.

4 Tell the class about you and your partner.

John usually gets up early. I never get up early.



# EVERYDAY ENGLISH

## Days of the week

- 1 **T 6.16** Listen and write the days in the correct order on the calendar.

Wednesday Monday Friday Tuesday  
Thursday Sunday Saturday

**T 6.16** Listen again and repeat.

- 2 Work with a partner. Ask and answer the questions.

- 1 What day is it today?
- 2 What day is it tomorrow?
- 3 What days do you go to school/work?
- 4 What days are the weekend?
- 5 What days do you like?
- 6 What days don't you like?

- 3 Write the correct preposition in the boxes.

on in at

nine o'clock  
ten thirty  
twelve fifteen  
the weekend

Sunday  
Monday  
Saturday evening  
Thursday morning  
Friday afternoon

the morning  
the afternoon  
the evening

- 4 Write the correct preposition. Then ask and answer the questions with your partner.

Do you have English lessons ... ?

1 at nine o'clock

Do you have English lessons at nine o'clock?

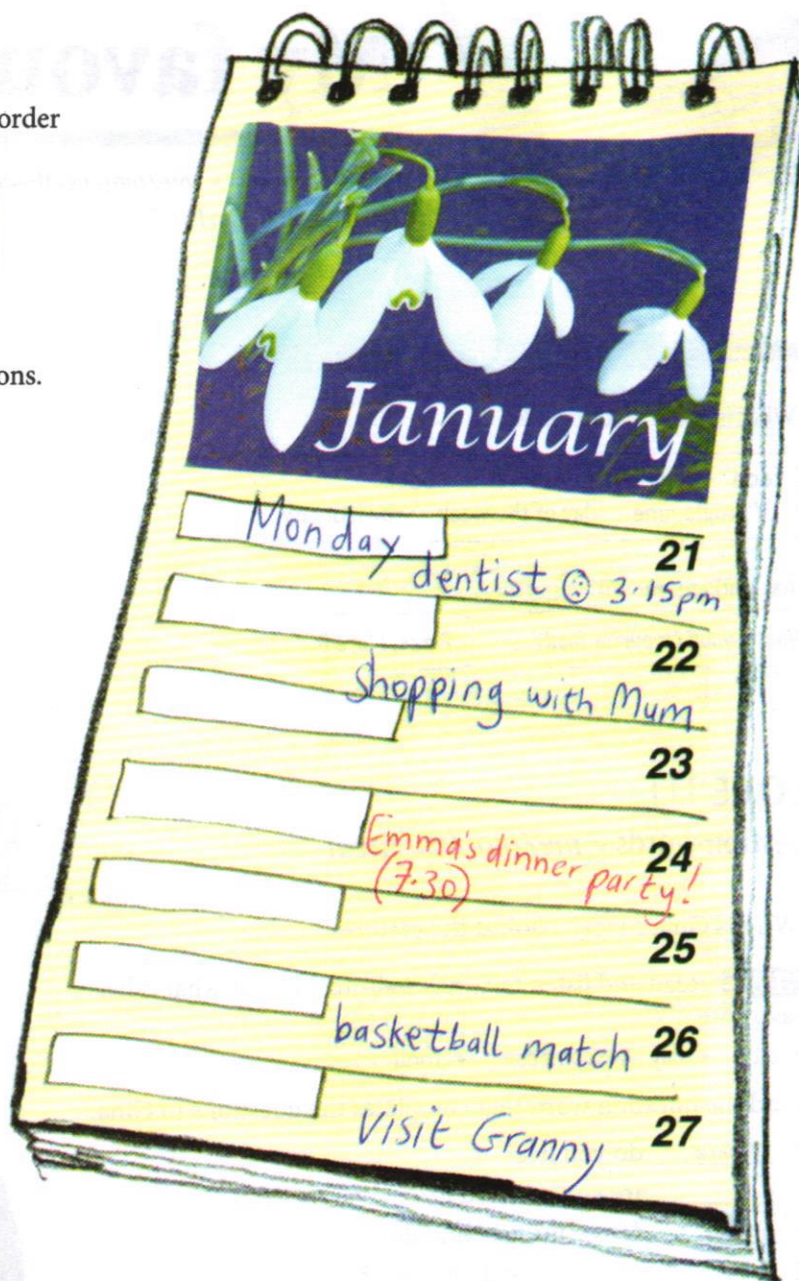
Yes, we do.

No, we don't.

- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ Sunday
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ the evening
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ Monday morning
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ the weekend

When do you have English lessons?

We have English lessons ...



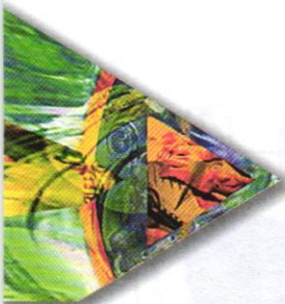
## Talking about you

- 5 Complete the questions. Ask and answer them with your partner.

Do you ... ?

- have a shower \_\_\_\_\_ the morning/evening
- get up early \_\_\_\_\_ Sunday morning
- go to work/school \_\_\_\_\_ Saturday
- eat in restaurants \_\_\_\_\_ the weekend
- watch TV \_\_\_\_\_ the afternoon
- stay at home \_\_\_\_\_ Friday evening





# 7

## My favourites

Question words • *me/him/us/them* • *this/that*  
Adjectives • *Can I...?*



### STARTER

- 1 What is your favourite ...?

food    drink    sport    book  
TV programme    day of the week    town or city

- 2 Ask and answer with a partner.

What's your favourite food?

Pizza. I love it.

### I LOVE IT!

Question words – *me/him/us/them*

- 1 Who is Gina Macy? Look at the pictures.
- 2 **T 7.1** Read and listen to Gina's website. Who or what is her favourite ...?
- city • day • composer • food
- 3 Find the question word that completes the questions to Gina.
- 1 Where do you live?
  - 2 \_\_\_\_\_ are you married to?
  - 3 \_\_\_\_\_ does your husband do?
  - 4 \_\_\_\_\_ are you in Sydney again?
  - 5 \_\_\_\_\_ are the children in the photos?
  - 6 \_\_\_\_\_ old are they?
  - 7 \_\_\_\_\_ concerts do you do every year?
  - 8 \_\_\_\_\_ do you work so hard? *Because ...*
  - 9 \_\_\_\_\_ do you do in your free time?
- 4 Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

Where do you live?

I live in France, in Paris.

- T 7.2** Listen and compare.



*Gina*  
Macy



## The famous international violinist answers your questions.

### 1 GERRY from WELLINGTON, NEW ZEALAND

You're American, but you don't live in the US. So **where** do you live?

**GINA** Hi Gerry! I live in France, in Paris. A lot of my work is here. Paris is my favourite city. I love it here.

### 2 DENG from SINGAPORE

Dear Gina, I know you are married. **Who** are you married to? **What** does your husband do?

**GINA** I'm married to a Frenchman, Julien Caribe. He's a pianist. He often works with me. I really like working with him. We're very happy.

### 3 MARION from SYDNEY, AUSTRALIA

Gina, I always see you when you play here at the Opera House. **Who** is your favourite composer? **When** are you in Sydney again?

**GINA** Thank you Marion. Paganini, the Italian composer, is my favourite. I love playing in Sydney. We're in Sydney next October.

### 4 JAMIL from BEIRUT, LEBANON

I like your website. **Who** are the children in the photos? They are beautiful. **How old** are they?

**GINA** The girls are our daughters Sophie (6), and Sacha (4). The baby is our son, Pierre-Louis. He's ten months. I adore them all.

### 5 ELENA from VERONA, ITALY

You do a lot of concerts. **How many** concerts do you do every year? You have three children. **Why** do you work so hard?

**GINA** Elena, I usually do about six concerts a year. I work hard **because** I love my work. But I love my family too. We have a nanny for our children. She lives with us.

### 6 FIONA from OXFORD, ENGLAND

Hi Gina, what's your favourite day of the week? **What** do you and Julien do in your spare time?

**GINA** Saturday is my favourite day. We all go to the best pizza restaurant in Paris. Our daughters love pizza; it's their favourite food. It's my favourite food, too!



### 5 Complete the sentences with the words from Gina's website.

- Paris is my favourite city.  
I love it here.
- He's a pianist. He often works with me and I really like working with him. We're very happy.
- The girls are my daughters and the boy is my son. I adore them all.
- We have a nanny for our children. She lives with us.
- Saturday is my favourite day.

### 6 Correct the information about Gina. Read it aloud.

ginamacy.com > Profile

Gina is a ~~journalist~~ <sup>violinist</sup>. New York is her favourite city. She loves it there. Next October she's in Singapore for a concert. She is married to an American. They have one daughter. Friday is their favourite day.

**T 7.3** Listen and check. Read it aloud again.

### GRAMMAR SPOT

#### 1 Match the question words with an answer.

Where?	Peter.
When?	In Syria.
Who?	On Sunday.
Why?	Because ...
How many?	Ten.

#### 2 Complete the chart.

Subject	I	you	he	she	it	we	they
Object	me		him			us	them
Possessive	my		his	her	its	our	their

►► Grammar Reference 7.1 – 7.2 p126



# THIS IS MY FAVOURITE ... this and that

1 Look at the pictures. Complete the conversations with *this* or *that*.



1

- A This is my favourite family photo.  
B Ah, yes. You all look very happy!



2

- C Who's that?  
D The guy in the hat? That's the boss!



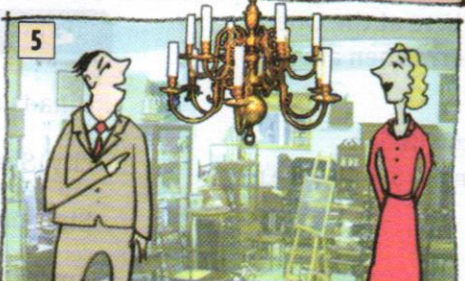
3

- E What's \_\_\_\_\_?  
F It's my new MP3 player.  
E Wow! It's great!



4

- G How much is \_\_\_\_\_?  
H £9.50.  
G I'll have it, please.



5

- I How much is \_\_\_\_\_?  
J It's £500.  
I I love it. It's fantastic!



6

- K Is \_\_\_\_\_ your phone?  
L Yes, it is. Thanks.



7

- M I like \_\_\_\_\_ coat.  
N The blue one?  
M No, the red one!



8

- O I like \_\_\_\_\_ cheese.  
P Where's it from?  
O France. It's delicious.



9

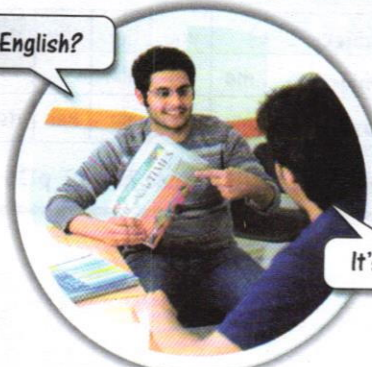
- Q \_\_\_\_\_ is for you.  
R A present? For me? Why?  
Q Because you're my wife!

T 7.4 Listen and check.

►► Grammar Reference 7.3 p126

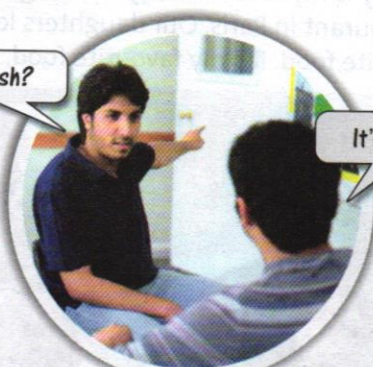
2 Test the other students! Ask them questions about things in your classroom.

What's this in English?



It's a newspaper.

What's that in English?



It's a door.



# PRACTICE

## I like them!

1 Complete the sentences with *it, you, them* ...

1 'Do you like ice-cream?'  
'Yes, I love it.'

2 'Do you like cats?'  
'No, I hate \_\_\_\_\_.'

3 'Do you like me?'  
'Of course I like \_\_\_\_\_!'

4 'Does Mrs Johnson teach you French?'  
'No, she teaches \_\_\_\_\_ English.'

5 'Do you like your teacher?'  
'We like \_\_\_\_\_ very much.'

**T 7.5** Listen and check.

## What do you like?

2 Ask and answer questions with a partner. Ask about ...

football cats television ice-cream chips horses  
mobile phones Google computer games your neighbours

Do you like football?

Yes, I love it!

No! I hate it!

Do you like cats?

Oh yes! I adore them.

## Questions and answers

3 Work with a partner. Ask and answer the questions.

- |                                       |                                   |                 |                           |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------|
| 1 Why/you live in London?             | <u>Why do you live in London?</u> | (... like ...)  | <u>Because I like it.</u> |
| 2 Why/Annie want to visit Oman?       | _____                             | (... love ...)  | _____                     |
| 3 Why/you eat so much chocolate?      | _____                             | (... adore ...) | _____                     |
| 4 Why/Fatma always sit next to Maria? | _____                             | (... like ...)  | _____                     |
| 5 Why/you/not watch football?         | _____                             | (... hate ...)  | _____                     |
| 6 Why/you/not eat carrots?            | _____                             | (... hate ...)  | _____                     |

4 Match the questions and answers.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 How do you come to school?                  | a They start at nine o'clock.             |
| 2 What do you have for breakfast?             | b In an office in the centre of town.     |
| 3 Who's your favourite sports person?         | c By bus.                                 |
| 4 Where does your father work?                | d Not a lot. About £2.                    |
| 5 Why do you want to learn English?           | e I don't have a favourite. I like a lot. |
| 6 How much money do you have on you?          | f Three.                                  |
| 7 What time do lessons start at your school?  | g Because it's an international language. |
| 8 How many languages does your teacher speak? | h Toast and coffee.                       |

**T 7.6** Listen and check. Practise the questions.

Work with a partner. Ask and answer the questions about you.

## Check it

5 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> What do you do at the weekend? | 4 <input type="checkbox"/> I don't drink milk. I don't like.       |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Where do you do at the weekend?  | <input type="checkbox"/> I don't drink milk. I don't like it.      |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Who is your best friend?       | 5 <input type="checkbox"/> Our teacher gives us a lot of homework. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> When is your best friend?        | <input type="checkbox"/> Our teacher gives we a lot of homework.   |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> How many money do you have?    | 6 <input type="checkbox"/> She watches me and I watch her.         |
| <input type="checkbox"/> How much money do you have?      | <input type="checkbox"/> She watches my and I watch she.           |













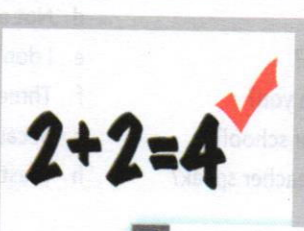
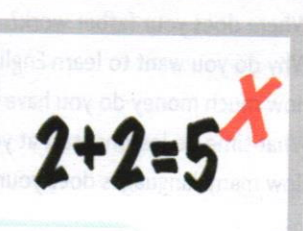
# VOCABULARY

## Adjectives

### 1 Write the words.

- This pizza is delicious. (LESICIUDO)
- Your family is really \_\_\_\_\_. (CENI)
- Our house is \_\_\_\_\_. (VOLEYL)
- I'm really \_\_\_\_\_ today. (APYHP)
- Our English lessons are \_\_\_\_\_. (NTIRSEGTIE)
- Paris is a \_\_\_\_\_ city. (ETFLBAUIU)
- Rain again! The weather is \_\_\_\_\_. (REBTRILE)
- Ugh! This coffee is \_\_\_\_\_! (FWAUL)

### 2 Match the words and pictures.

new/old	expensive/cheap	big/small	hot/cold	right/wrong	black/white
					
1 <u>It's big.</u> / <u>It's small.</u>		4 _____ / _____			
					
2 _____ / _____		5 _____ / _____			
					
3 _____ / _____		6 _____ / _____			

### 3 T 7.7 Listen and complete the conversations.

- 1 A It's so hot today, isn't it?  
B I know. It's \_\_\_\_\_ degrees!

- 2 C Hey! I like your \_\_\_\_\_ shoes!  
D Thank you! They're really nice, aren't they?  
C They're \_\_\_\_\_!

- 3 E I live in a very \_\_\_\_\_ flat.  
F How many bedrooms do you have?  
E Only \_\_\_\_\_!

- 4 G How \_\_\_\_\_ is that coat?  
H £150.  
G Wow! That's too \_\_\_\_\_ for me.

- 5 I Your name's Peter, isn't it?  
J Yes, that's \_\_\_\_\_.  
I \_\_\_\_\_ to meet you, Peter.

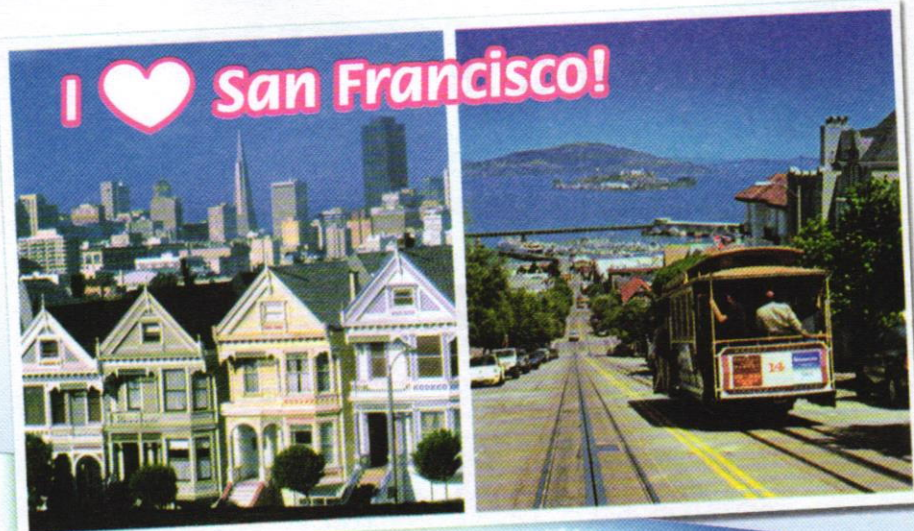
Practise the conversations with a partner.



## READING AND WRITING

### A postcard from San Francisco

- 1 **T 7.8** Look at the postcard. Read and listen.



Dear Allen,

We're on holiday in San Francisco this week. Our hotel is very nice – old, but comfortable. The people are very friendly, but it isn't easy to understand them. They speak so fast! The food is delicious, especially the seafood, and the cafés and restaurants are wonderful!

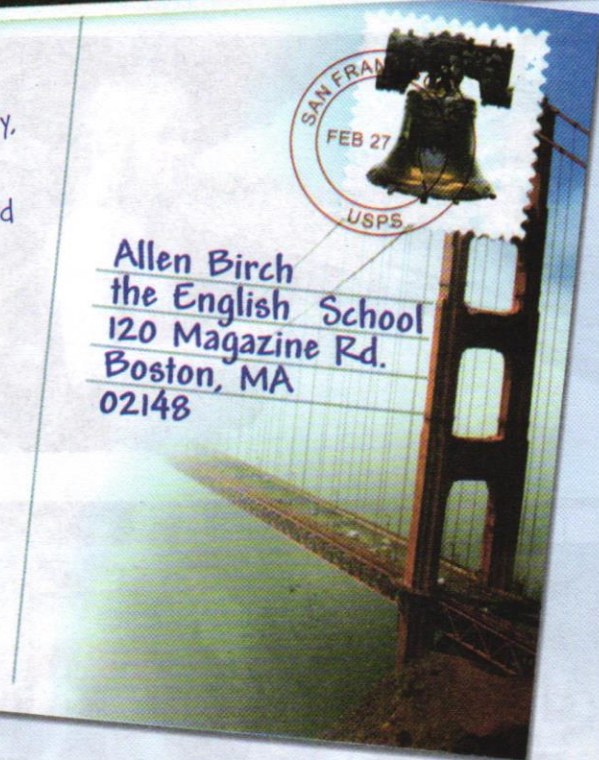
San Francisco is beautiful. It's a big city, with a lot of new buildings, and it isn't expensive. The shops are great, and the Golden Gate Bridge is amazing!

The weather is awful – rain and fog. It's cold and wet, but we're very happy!

See you next week.

From

Ali and Ahmed (your Libyan students!)



- 2 Answer the questions.

- 1 Who is the postcard from?
- 2 Where are they?
- 3 Why are they in San Francisco?
- 4 Is their holiday good?
- 5 What isn't so good?

- 3 What adjectives do Ali and Ahmed use?

	Adjectives
their hotel	nice, old, comfortable
the people	
the food	
the cafés and restaurants	
San Francisco	
the shops	
the Golden Gate Bridge	
the weather	

### Writing

- 4 Write a postcard to a friend.

Dear ...

We're on holiday in ... and it's very ...

Our hotel is ...

The people are ...

The food is ...

The weather is ..., and ... we go ...

See you soon.

Love ...



# EVERYDAY ENGLISH

## Can I ...?

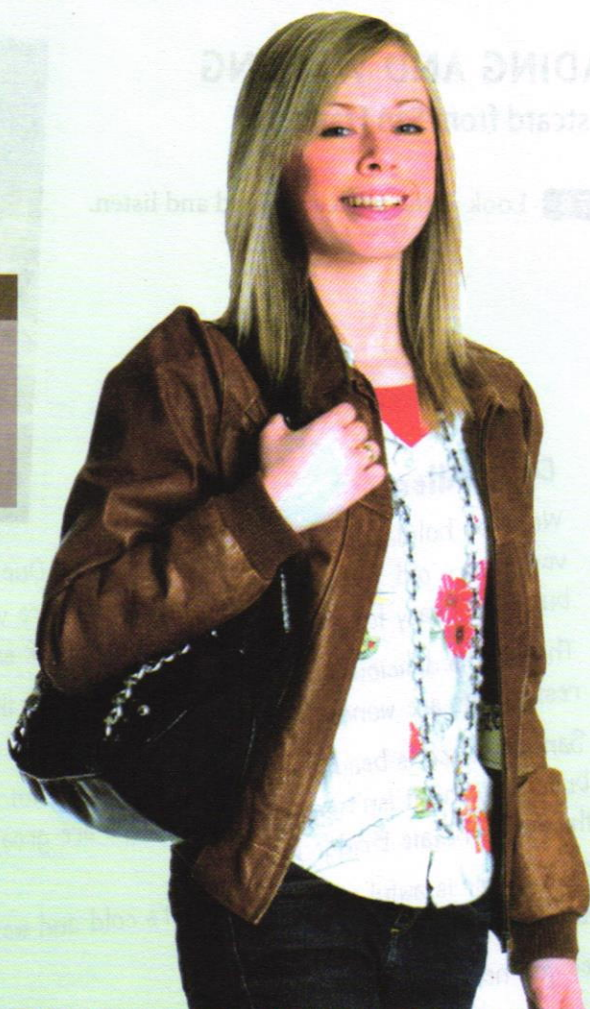
- 1 Write a number 1-5 (place) and a letter a-e (activity) for each picture.

### PLACES

- 1 a chemist's
- 2 a railway station
- 3 a post office
- 4 a clothes shop
- 5 a café

### ACTIVITIES

- a have a coffee
- b buy some aspirin
- c post letters
- d catch a train
- e try on a jumper





## Iveta in town

- 2 **T 7.9** Listen to Iveta. She is in different places in town. Where is she in the conversations? What does she want?

Where is she?	What does she want?
1 at the railway station	a return ticket to Oxford
2	
3	
4	
5	

- 3 Complete the conversations with a partner.

### 1 IN A RAILWAY STATION

- I Can I have a return \_\_\_\_\_ to Oxford, please?  
 A Sure.  
 I How much \_\_\_\_\_?  
 A Twenty-two \_\_\_\_\_ fifty, please.  
 I Can I \_\_\_\_\_ by \_\_\_\_\_ card?  
 A No problem. Put your card in the machine.  
 And enter your PIN number, please.

### 2 IN A CLOTHES SHOP

- I Hello. Can I \_\_\_\_\_ this jumper, please?  
 B \_\_\_\_\_. The changing rooms are over there.

### 3 IN A POST OFFICE

- I \_\_\_\_\_ post these letters to the Czech Republic, \_\_\_\_\_?  
 C Sure. Put them on the scales. That's £1.68.  
 I Thank you. \_\_\_\_\_ is a stamp for a postcard to the United States?  
 C \_\_\_\_\_ -two p.  
 I Can I have \_\_\_\_\_, please?

### 4 IN A CAFÉ

- D Yes, please!  
 I Can I have \_\_\_\_\_, please? With milk.  
 D Large or small?  
 I \_\_\_\_\_. To take away.  
 D Sure. Anything to eat?  
 I No, \_\_\_\_\_. Just a coffee.  
 D Thanks \_\_\_\_\_.

### 5 IN A CHEMIST'S

- E Next, please!  
 I Hello. Can I have \_\_\_\_\_, please?  
 E Twelve or twenty-four?  
 I \_\_\_\_\_?  
 E Do you want a packet of twelve aspirin or twenty-four?  
 I Oh, twelve's \_\_\_\_\_, thanks.

**T 7.10** Listen and check. Practise the conversations.



### Roleplay

- 4 Work with a partner. Make more conversations with different information.
- a return/single ticket to Manchester/Bristol
  - this jacket/this T-shirt
  - this parcel to Italy/this letter to Qatar
  - a cheese and salad sandwich/an ice-cream
  - shampoo/toothpaste



# 8

# Where I live

Rooms and furniture • *There is/are* • Prepositions • Directions

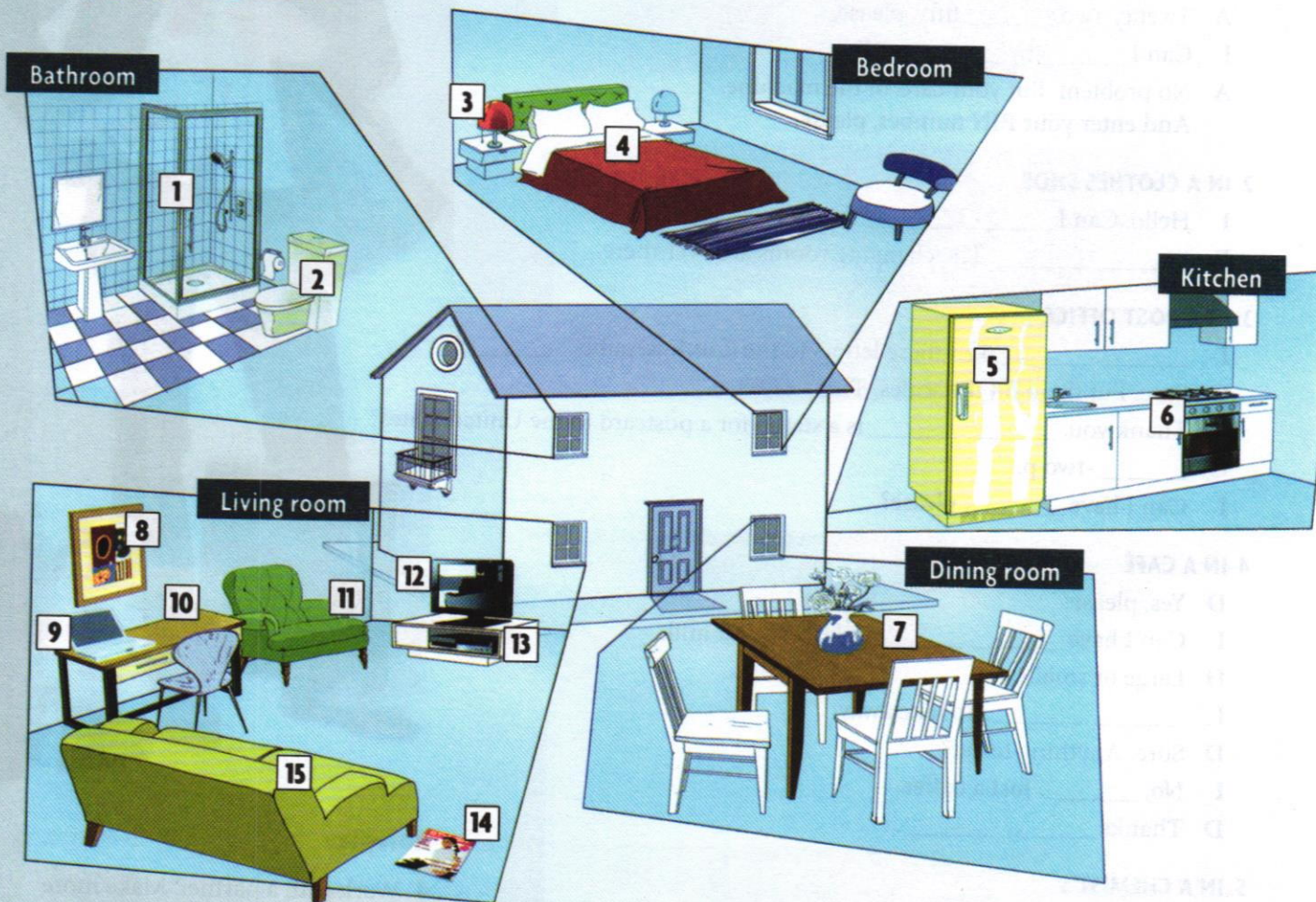
## STARTER

- 1 Do you live in a house or a flat? Do you have a garden or a balcony? Tell the class.

*I live in a flat.*

*We don't have a garden, but we have a big balcony.*

- 2 **T 8.1** Look at the picture. Listen and repeat the rooms of a house.  
*living room, dining room ...*



- 3 Find the things in the house. Write the numbers.

- |   |                                   |                                      |                                     |                                       |
|---|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 4 a bed | <input type="checkbox"/> a TV     | <input type="checkbox"/> a table     | <input type="checkbox"/> a lamp     | <input type="checkbox"/> a DVD player |
| <input type="checkbox"/> a cooker           | <input type="checkbox"/> a shower | <input type="checkbox"/> a fridge    | <input type="checkbox"/> a picture  | <input type="checkbox"/> a laptop     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> a sofa             | <input type="checkbox"/> a toilet | <input type="checkbox"/> an armchair | <input type="checkbox"/> a magazine | <input type="checkbox"/> a desk       |

**T 8.2** Listen and repeat.



# ROBERT'S LIVING ROOM

There is/are ...

- 1 **T 8.3** Read and listen to Robert describing his living room. Complete his description.

'My living room isn't very big, but I think it's great. There's an old sofa, and there are two armchairs. \_\_\_\_\_'s a table with a TV and a DVD player on it. \_\_\_\_\_ also a PlayStation®. I love all the games. There \_\_\_\_\_ some books, and \_\_\_\_\_ are a lot of pictures and posters on the walls. \_\_\_\_\_ two lamps. My room's not very tidy but it's really comfortable.'



- 2 Talk about Robert's living room.

There's an old sofa.

There are two armchairs.

- a sofa
- armchairs
- a DVD player
- a table
- books
- lamps
- posters
- a PlayStation®

- 3 **T 8.4** Listen and repeat the questions and answers.

- Is there a sofa? ✓ Yes, there is.  
Is there a desk? ✗ No, there isn't.  
Are there any armchairs? ✓ Yes, there are.  
Are there any photographs? ✗ No, there aren't.

Practise them with a partner.

## GRAMMAR SPOT

Complete the sentences.

**Positive** There's a sofa.

\_\_\_\_\_ two armchairs.

**Question** \_\_\_\_\_ a TV?

Are there any pictures?

**Negative** There isn't a computer.

\_\_\_\_\_ any photographs.

►► Grammar Reference 8.1 – 8.2 p126

- 4 Ask and answer questions about Robert's living room.

- a TV
- photographs
- a desk
- a telephone
- lamps
- a DVD player
- a PlayStation®
- magazines

Is there a TV?

Yes, there is.

Are there any photographs?

No, there aren't.

- 5 Look again at Robert's living room. Is it tidy?

**T 8.5** Listen to Robert talking to his mother.

- 1 What things in his flat does she ask about?
- 2 What are her questions?
- 3 When does she want to visit?



Look at **T 8.5** on p117. Practise the conversation with a partner.

- 6 Work with a partner. Describe your living room.

In my living room there's a ... There are a lot of ...



# ROBERT'S BEDROOM

## Prepositions

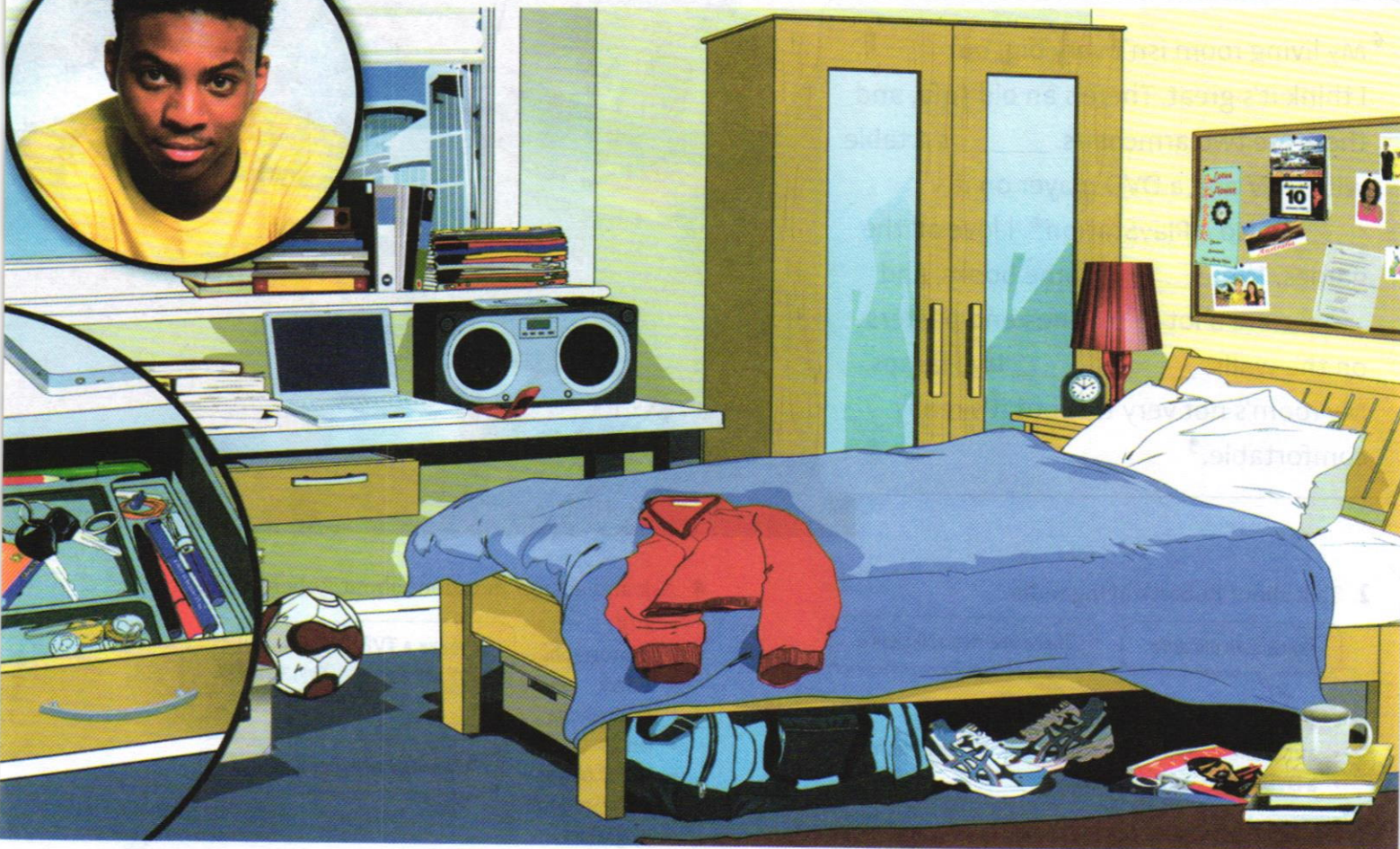
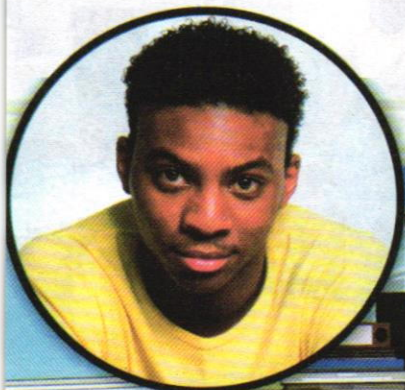
1 Look at the prepositions.

in

on

under

next to



2 Look at Robert's bedroom. Write a preposition from exercise 1.

- 1 His laptop is on the desk.
- 2 The CD player is \_\_\_\_\_ the laptop.
- 3 There are three books \_\_\_\_\_ the floor \_\_\_\_\_ his bed.
- 4 His car keys are \_\_\_\_\_ the drawer.
- 5 There's a football \_\_\_\_\_ the floor \_\_\_\_\_ the desk.
- 6 His trainers are \_\_\_\_\_ his bag \_\_\_\_\_ his bed.

**T 8.6** Listen and check. Practise the sentences.

3 Ask and answer questions about Robert's things.

Where's Robert's CD player?

It's on the desk next to the laptop.

Where are his car keys?

They're in the drawer.

Ask about his ...

- |              |                |               |
|--------------|----------------|---------------|
| • CD player  | • magazines    | • alarm clock |
| • car keys   | • credit cards | • trainers    |
| • sports bag | • jumper       | • photos      |
| • pens       | • lamp         | • mug         |

4 Close your eyes! Ask and answer questions about things in your classroom.

Where's John's dictionary?

It's in his bag.



# PRACTICE

## Questions and answers

- 1 Put the words in the correct order to make questions.

house live Do you  
a or in flat a

1 Do you live in a house or a flat?

many are bedrooms  
How there

2 How many bedrooms are there?

there kitchen Is  
a phone the in

3 Is there a kitchen in the house?

in living television the  
Is a room there

4 Is there a living room in the house?

DVD player a under Is  
there the television

5 Is there a DVD player under the television?

there in Are your  
bedroom books a lot of

6 Are there many books in your bedroom?

on Are the there  
pictures any wall

7 Are there any pictures on the wall?

**T 8.7** Listen and check.

- 2 Work with a partner. Ask and answer the questions about your home.

## Two different rooms

- 3 Work with a partner.

**Student A** Look at the picture on this page.

**Student B** Look at the picture on p141.

Your pictures are different. Talk about them to find differences.

In my picture, there's a ...

In my picture, there isn't a ...

Is there a ...?

Yes, there is. / No, there isn't.



- 4 **T 8.8** Listen to a description of one of the rooms. Which room is it?

## Check it

- 5 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

- 1 ☐ Is a sofa in the living room?  
☐ Is there a sofa in the living room?
- 2 ☐ There's DVD player on the floor.  
☐ There's a DVD player on the floor.
- 3 ☐ Are there a poster on the wall?  
☐ Are there any posters on the wall?
- 4 ☐ My keys are in the drawer.  
☐ My keys are on the drawer.
- 5 ☐ The lamp is next to the bed.  
☐ The lamp is next the bed.



## READING AND VOCABULARY

### Vancouver – the best city in the world

- 1 Work with a partner. Look at the map and find Vancouver. Is it near the US?
- 2 Look at the pictures. Find these things.
  - mountains
  - a ferry
  - a park
  - the sea
  - a trolley bus
  - sailing
  - a beach
  - a train
  - fishing
- 3 Read the text about Vancouver. Write the five paragraph headings in the correct place.

**Where is it?**

**Where to stay**

**When to go**

**What to do**

**How to travel**

**Where to eat**

**T 8.9** Listen and check.

- 4 Answer the questions.
  - 1 Where is Vancouver?
  - 2 When is a good time to visit?
  - 3 Does it rain a lot? When?
  - 4 What do people do ... ?
    - in the mountains
    - on the beach
    - in Stanley Park
  - 5 What water sports are there?
  - 6 Why are there so many kinds of restaurants?
  - 7 Are *all* the hotels expensive? How much are they?
  - 8 What is a good way to see the city?
- 5 Complete the chart with adjectives from the text.

Adjectives	Nouns
<i>busy, cosmopolitan</i>	city
	mountains
	beaches
	shops and restaurants
	the weather
	seafood
	hotels
	trolley buses
	Sky Train





# Vancouver, Canada



Vancouver is called the  
**'best city in the world'.**  
Why? Is it the spectacular mountains?  
The beautiful beaches?  
The excellent shops and restaurants?  
It's all of this and more!

## Where is it?

**Vancouver** is in south-west Canada, next to the Pacific Ocean, 24 miles from the US border.

It is always a good time to visit Vancouver. The weather is never too cold or too hot. It is warm and sunny in summer, but it rains a lot in autumn and winter.

In spring, go skiing in the mountains in the morning and relax on the beach in the afternoon. In summer, go swimming, sailing or fishing, or go walking in North America's biggest park, Stanley Park. There are excellent shops in Yaletown, and there is also theatre of every sort. Vancouver is the 'City of Festivals'.

Vancouver is a cosmopolitan city so there are French, Italian, Japanese, Indian, Thai, and Chinese restaurants. Vancouver's Chinatown is the second biggest in North America, after San Francisco. There is also a lot of delicious, fresh seafood.

In the busy city centre there are some excellent, expensive hotels. The beautiful Fairmont Hotel is \$400 a night, but next to the sea there are a lot of cheap, comfortable hotels from \$59 a night.

You don't need a car in Vancouver. There are slow, old trolley buses and there is the fast, modern Sky Train. Take the ferry – it is a great way to see the city.



# LISTENING AND WRITING

## My home town

- 1 **T 8.10** Listen to Steve. He lives in Vancouver.  
Tick (✓) the things he talks about.



- |  |                                       |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> his job       | <input type="checkbox"/> motor racing | <input type="checkbox"/> skiing       |
| <input type="checkbox"/> relaxing      | <input type="checkbox"/> Italian food | <input type="checkbox"/> golf         |
| <input type="checkbox"/> his apartment | <input type="checkbox"/> his wife     | <input type="checkbox"/> cycling      |
| <input type="checkbox"/> his brother   | <input type="checkbox"/> the weather  | <input type="checkbox"/> Stanley Park |

- 2 **T 8.10** Listen again. Answer the questions.
- Where does Steve work?
  - Where does he live?
  - Is his apartment big?
  - What is his favourite food?
  - Where does he go with his wife after work?
  - What sports does Steve like?
  - Where does he cycle with his wife?
  - Does he always like the weather?

- 3 **T 8.11** Listen to four conversations with Steve.  
Complete the chart.

	What is the conversation about?	Who is Steve talking to?
1		
2		
3		
4		

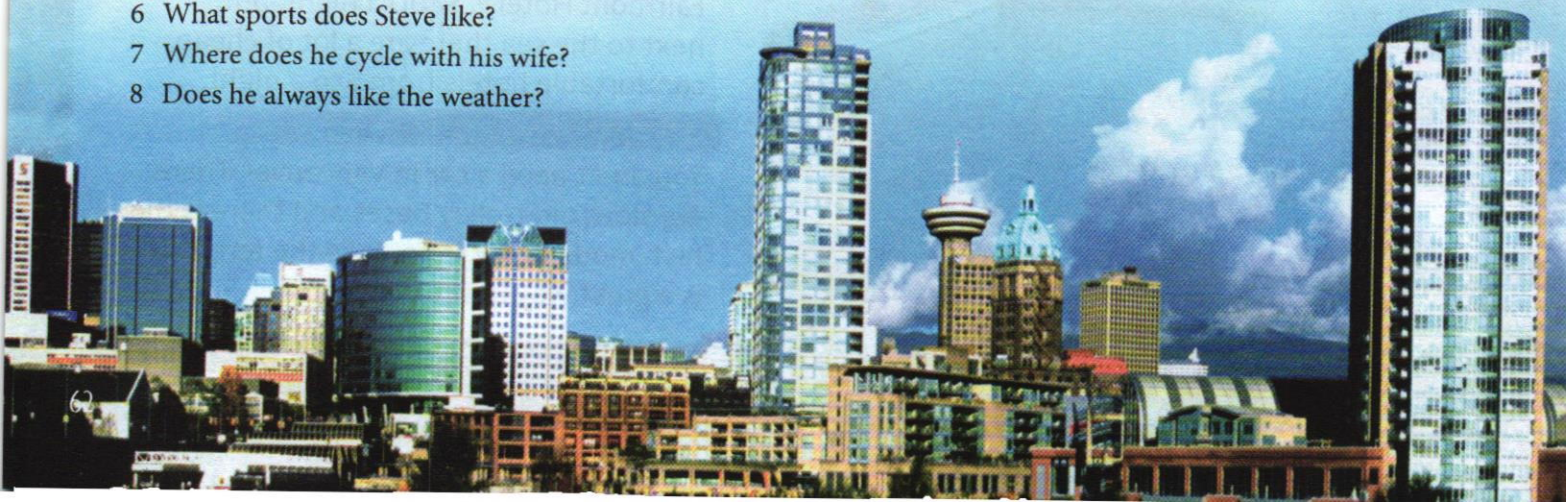
Look at **T 8.11** on p117. Practise the conversations with a partner.

- 4 In groups, talk about *your* home town.
- Where do you live?
  - What is there in your town?
  - What do you do there with your friends?
  - Where do you go shopping?
  - How do you travel?
  - Is it a good place to live?

## Writing

- 5 Write about a town you know.

- |                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| <b>Where is it?</b>  | ... is a town in ...  |
| <b>When to visit</b> | The best time to visit is ...   |
| <b>What to do</b>    | Go ... There are a lot of ...   |
| <b>Where to eat</b>  | There are good restaurants in ...<br>My favourite restaurant is ...       |
| <b>Where to stay</b> | ... is an expensive hotel in ...<br>... is a cheap hotel near/next to ... |
| <b>How to travel</b> | The best way to see the town is ...                                       |





# EVERYDAY ENGLISH

## Directions

1 Find the places on the map.

hotel bank chemist's post office hospital castle supermarket park fish and chip shop  
restaurant Internet café railway station school theatre sports centre car park cinema café



2 What do the signs mean?

turn right go straight on turn left



3 **T 8.12** Listen to the directions. Start from **YOU ARE HERE** on the map. Follow the directions. Where are you?

1 Go up North Road. Turn left at the bank into Charles Street. It's on the right next to the theatre.  
at the sports centre

- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_

Look at **T 8.12** on p118. Practise the directions.

4 Work with a partner. Have similar conversations.

Ask about ...

- a cinema
- a post office
- a hospital
- a supermarket
- a car park
- a café

Excuse me! Is there a ... near here?

Yes. Go down ...

5 With your partner, ask for and give directions to places in your town.

How do I get to the bus station?

Go out of the school, turn right ...

Is it far?

About ten minutes.





# 9 Times past

Saying years • *was/were born* • Past Simple – irregular verbs • *have/do/go*  
When's your birthday?



## STARTER

- 1 **T 9.1** Listen and underline the years you hear. Say them.  
1 1996 / 1986    2 1916 / 1960    3 2010 / 2002    4 1699 / 1799    5 1840 / 1945    6 2005 / 2015
- 2 **T 9.2** Listen and repeat.  
1840 eighteen forty    1996 nineteen ninety-six    2005 two thousand and five    2010 two thousand and ten / twenty ten
- 3 What year is it now? What year was it last year? What year is it next year?

## WHEN WAS SHE BORN?

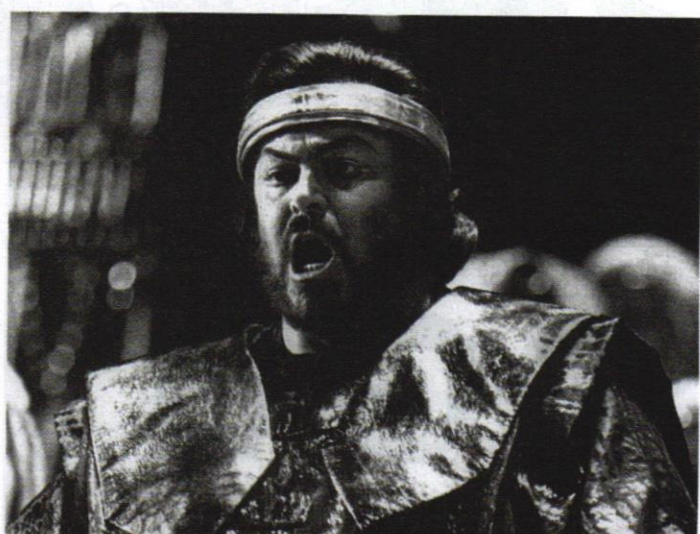
*was/were born*

- 1 Look at the photos. Do you know the people? When were they born?  
**T 9.3** Listen and write the years.



**Jane Austen (17\*\* – 1817)**

Jane Austen, the English writer, was born in \_\_\_\_\_, in Hampshire, in the south of England.



**Luciano Pavarotti (19\*\* – 2007)**

Luciano Pavarotti, the Italian opera singer, was born in \_\_\_\_\_, in Modena, in the north of Italy.

- 2 **T 9.4** Listen and repeat.  
She was a writer. She was born in \_\_\_\_\_.  
He was an opera singer. He was born in \_\_\_\_\_.



- 3 Ask and answer questions with other students.

How old are you?

I'm 18/21 ... I was born in 19 ...

- 4 **T 9.5** Listen to the questions and answers. Practise them.

When **were** you born? I was born in 1994.  
 When **was** he born? He was born in 1978.  
 When **was** she born? She was born in 1991.  
 When **were** they born? They were born in 2001.



## GRAMMAR SPOT

Complete the chart of the verb *to be*.

	Present	Past
I	am	
You	are	were
He/She/It	is	
We	are	were
They	are	

▶▶ Grammar Reference 9.1 p127

- 5 **T 9.6** This is Magalie Dromard. Listen to her talking about her family. Write when the people were born.



**MAGALIE DROMARD**

### MY FAMILY

Magalie 1994

Tristan \_\_\_\_\_

Cecilia \_\_\_\_\_

Matt \_\_\_\_\_

André \_\_\_\_\_

Ella \_\_\_\_\_

Edith \_\_\_\_\_

Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about Magalie's family.

Who's Tristan?

He's Magalie's brother.

When was he born?

In 1985.

Who are André and Ella?

They're her ...

When were they ... ?

- 6 Who is your grandmother/grandfather/aunt/uncle ...?

Write the names of some people in your family.  
 Ask and answer questions about them.

Ernest Mary

A Who's Ernest?  
 B He's my uncle.

A When was he born?  
 B I'm not sure. I think about 1935.

- 7 Tell the class about your partner's family.

Peter's uncle was born in 1956.  
 His father was born in 1962.



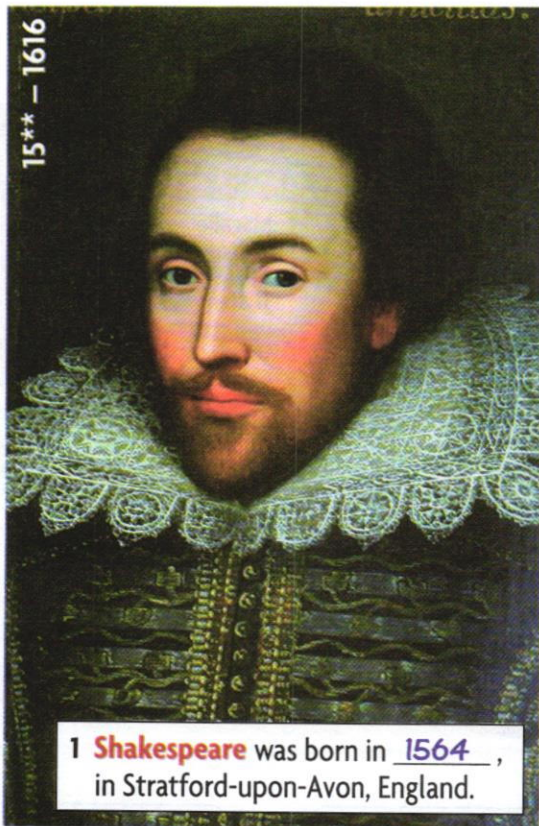


## PRACTICE

### Who were they?

- 1 Who are the people in the photographs?  
Match the people 1–8 and the jobs in the box.

- |                                   |                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> singer   | <input type="checkbox"/> writer   | <input type="checkbox"/> politician    |
| <input type="checkbox"/> musician | <input type="checkbox"/> artist   | <input type="checkbox"/> racing driver |
| <input type="checkbox"/> actor    | <input type="checkbox"/> princess |  |



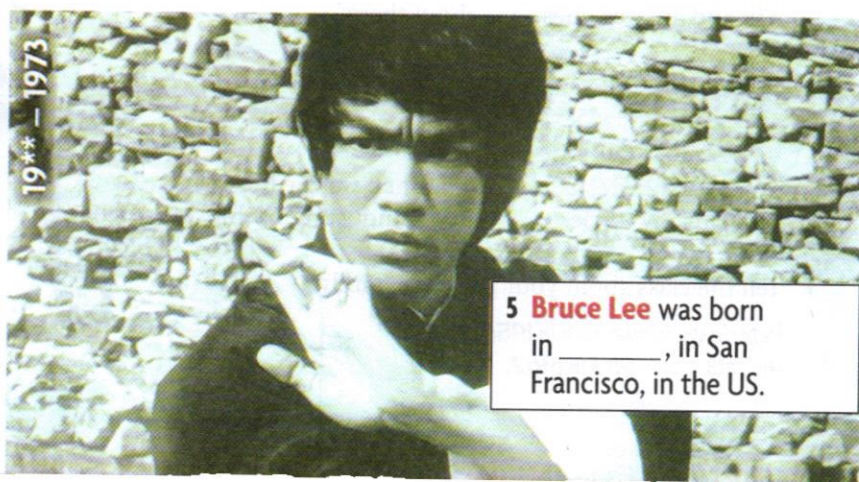
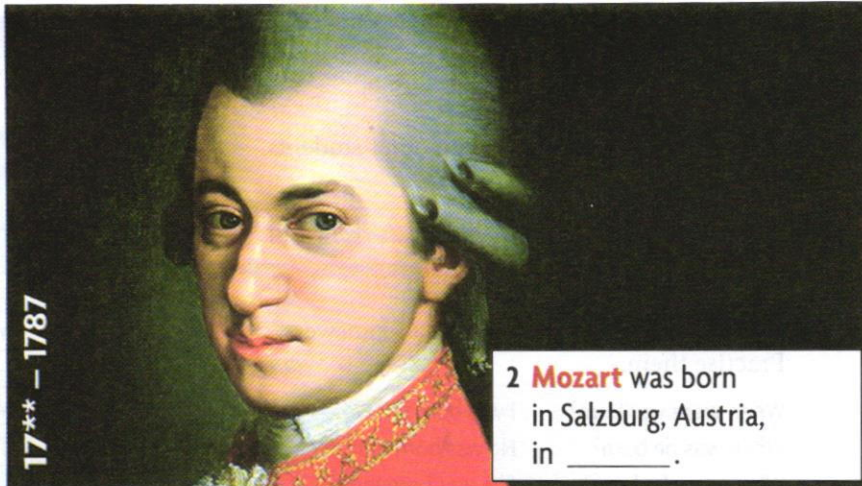
- 2 **T 9.7** Listen and write when they were born.  
3 **T 9.8** Listen to the questions and answers.  
Practise them.

**Who was Shakespeare?** He was a writer.  
**Where was he born?** In England.  
**When was he born?** In 1564.

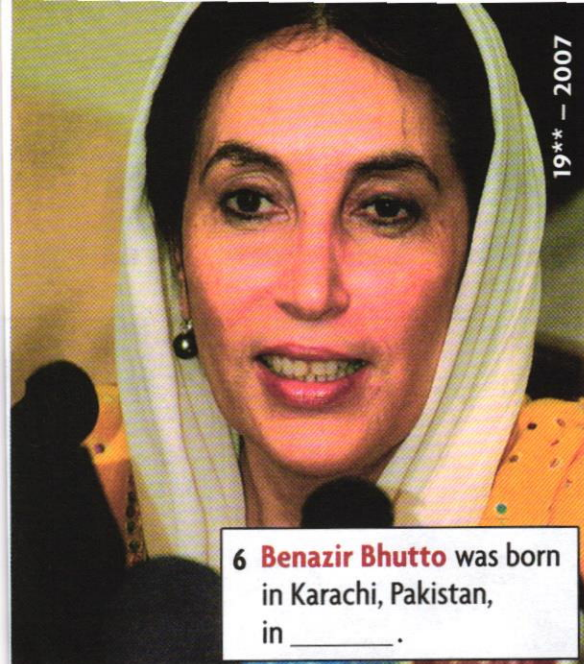
Work with a partner. Ask and answer the  
questions about the other people.

Who was Vincent Van Gogh?

He was an . . .

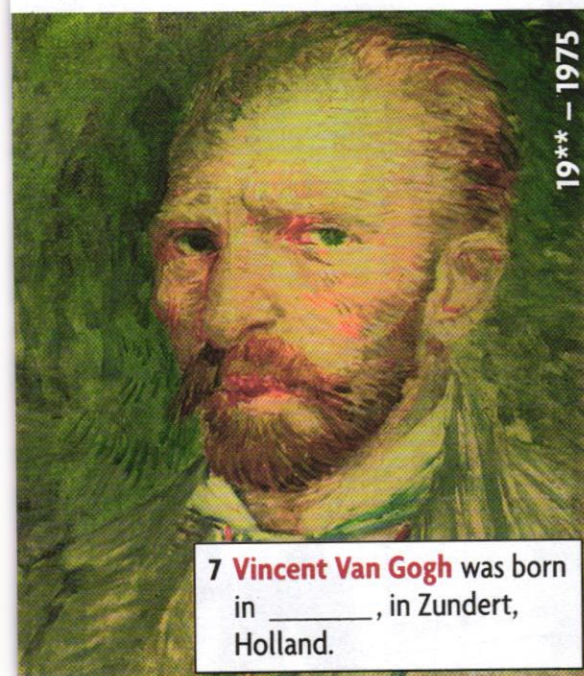






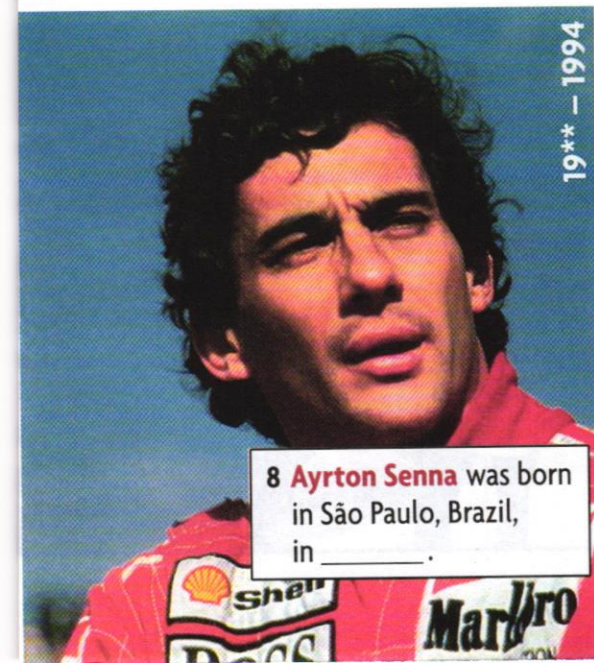
19\*\* - 2007

6 **Benazir Bhutto** was born in Karachi, Pakistan, in \_\_\_\_\_.



19\*\* - 1975

7 **Vincent Van Gogh** was born in \_\_\_\_\_, in Zundert, Holland.



19\*\* - 1994

8 **Ayrton Senna** was born in São Paulo, Brazil, in \_\_\_\_\_.

## Negatives and pronunciation

4 **T 9.9** Listen and repeat.

Shakespeare was an artist.  
No, he **wasn't**. He was a writer.

Shakespeare and Diana were Irish.  
No, they **weren't**. They were English.

5 Write the correct information.

- Ayrton Senna was an actor.  
No, he **wasn't**! He was a racing driver!
- Jane Austen was a princess.  
No, she \_\_\_\_\_!
- Shakespeare and Jane Austen were artists.  
No, they \_\_\_\_\_!
- Mozart was a scientist.  
No, he \_\_\_\_\_!
- Luciano Pavarotti and Umm Kalthoum were politicians.  
No, they \_\_\_\_\_!
- Benazir Bhutto was a writer.  
No, she \_\_\_\_\_!

**T 9.10** Listen and check. Practise the sentences.

## Today and yesterday

6 What is true for you? Tell a partner.

Today is ...	Monday / Tuesday / Wednesday ...
Yesterday was ...	
Today I'm ...	at school / at home / at work ...
Yesterday I was ...	
Today the weather is ...	hot / cold / wet / lovely / horrible ...
Yesterday the weather was ...	
Today my parents are ...	at work / at home ...
Yesterday my parents were ...	

## Check it

7 Complete the sentences with *was*, *wasn't*, *were*, or *weren't*.

- Where **was** your father born?
- When \_\_\_\_\_ your parents born?
- My parents \_\_\_\_\_ both born in 1961. My father \_\_\_\_\_ born in 1961, and my mother \_\_\_\_\_ born in 1963.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ on holiday in Syria in 2008.
- '\_\_\_\_\_ he at home yesterday?' 'No, he \_\_\_\_\_.'
- '\_\_\_\_\_ you at work yesterday?' 'Yes, we \_\_\_\_\_.'
- '\_\_\_\_\_ they at school yesterday morning?' 'No, they \_\_\_\_\_.'

**! Pronunciation**

/wəz/

1 He **was** an artist

/wɒznt/

No, he **wasn't**.

/wə/

2 They **were** Irish.

/wɜːnt/

No, they **weren't**.



## READING AND SPEAKING

### Past Simple – irregular verbs

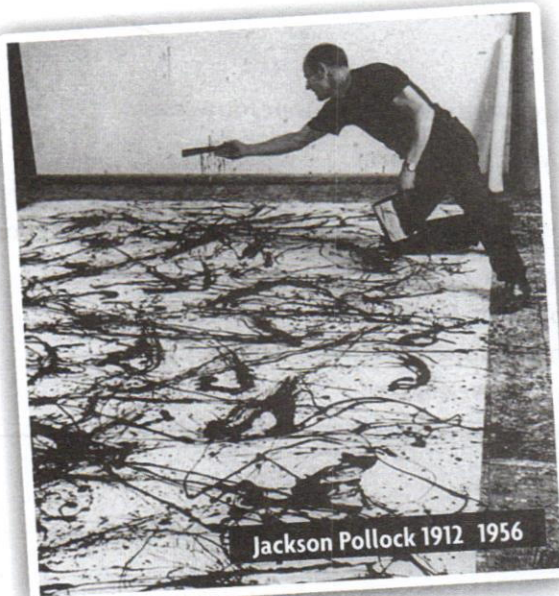
- 1 Match the present and the past forms of the verbs.  
Look at the Irregular verbs list on p142.

Present	Past
go	saw
come	went
have	said
be	made
make	came
see	had
buy	found
say	bought /bo:t/
find	was

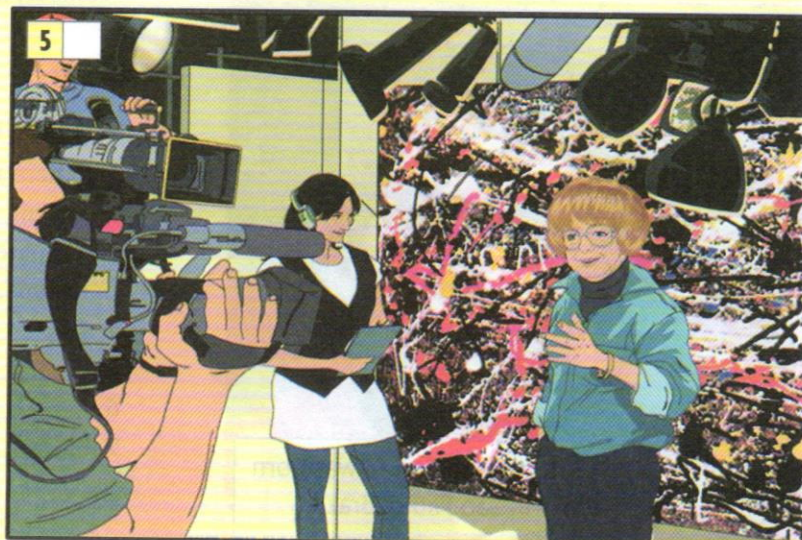
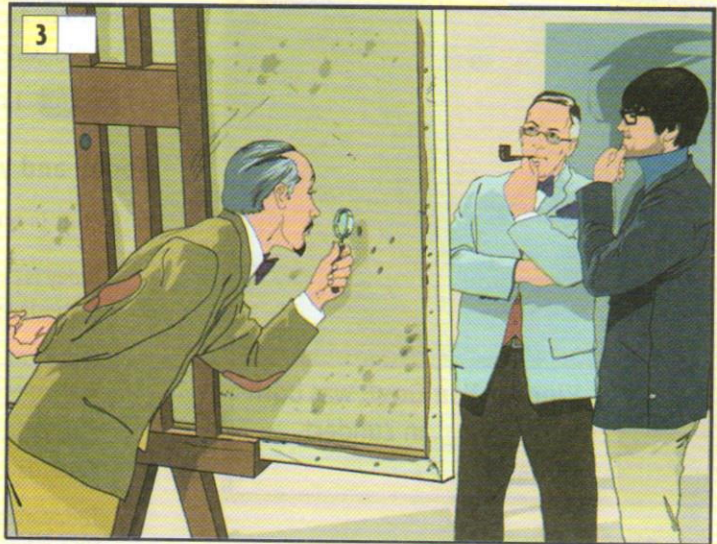
**T 9.11** Listen and check. Practise the verbs.

▶▶ **Grammar Reference 9.2 p127**

- 2 Look at the pictures. They tell a true story.  
Match the sentences and pictures.
- The painting is now for sale in an art gallery Canada.
  - An American lady went shopping and bought painting for \$5 from a charity shop.
  - A rich businessman was happy to pay \$9 million, but Teri said 'I want \$50 million!'
  - One expert found Pollock's fingerprint on the back of the painting.
  - A film company made a film about Teri and the painting.
  - An art teacher said the painting was by the famous artist, Jackson Pollock.



# It's a Jackson





# Pollock!

- 3 Read and complete the newspaper article with the irregular verbs from exercise 1.

Helen Byers in Los Angeles reports

## WHO IS JACKSON POLLOCK?

Teri Horton, a 60-year-old lady from Los Angeles, (1) went shopping in San Bernardino, a town in California, USA. She (2) was in a charity shop when she (3) \_\_\_\_\_ a colourful, modern painting. She (4) \_\_\_\_\_ it for \$5.

An art teacher saw the painting and (5) \_\_\_\_\_ it was by the American artist, Jackson Pollock. 'Who is Jackson Pollock?' said Teri. She (6) \_\_\_\_\_ no idea that he was a very famous modern painter.

Many art experts (7) \_\_\_\_\_ to her house to see the painting. Some said that it wasn't a 'Pollock', but one expert, Peter Paul Biró, (8) \_\_\_\_\_ Pollock's fingerprint on the back. Biró said, 'This is a real Pollock painting.'

A rich man was happy to pay \$9 million for it, but Teri said: 'No! I want \$50 million.'

In 2007, a Canadian TV company (9) \_\_\_\_\_ a film about Teri and the painting. It is now for sale in an art gallery in Toronto. Price: \$50 million!



Teri Horton with Pollock painting

Read the article aloud with a partner.

**T 9.12** Listen and check.

- 4 Look at the pictures only and tell the story again.

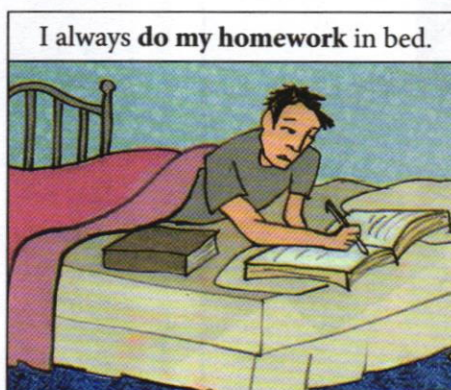
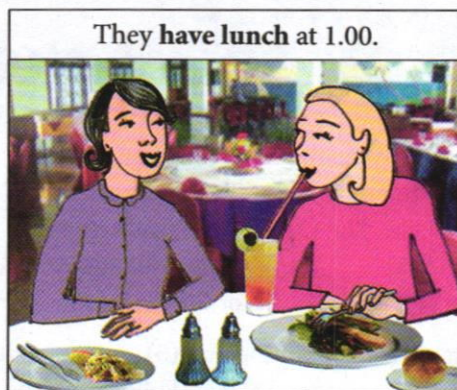




## VOCABULARY

have, do, go

1 Look at the words that go with *have*, *do*, and *go*.



2 Write the words in the box next to the correct verb, *have*, *do*, or *go*.

shopping	lunch	my homework
a shower	the housework	on holiday
for a walk	some exercise	home
a good time	breakfast	to work

**have**

lunch

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**do**

my homework

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**go**

shopping

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

3 Write the past of *have*, *do*, and *go*.

went	had	did
Present	Past	
have		
do		
go		

4 Complete the sentences with *went*, *had* or *did*.

- Yesterday I met my mother at one o'clock and we had lunch in a restaurant.
- I hate doing housework but last Sunday I \_\_\_\_\_ a lot because my house was a mess.
- Yesterday was a lovely day so I \_\_\_\_\_ for a walk in the park.
- Usually I walk but yesterday I \_\_\_\_\_ to work by bus.
- On Saturday night I went to a great restaurant. I \_\_\_\_\_ a really nice meal.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of exercise yesterday. I went to the gym.
- The film wasn't very good so we \_\_\_\_\_ home early.

**T 9.13** Listen and check.

### Talking about you

5 Complete the sentences with what *you* did.

- Yesterday I had a shower at \_\_\_\_\_ o'clock.
- This morning I \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast at \_\_\_\_\_ o'clock. I had coffee and \_\_\_\_\_.
- Last Saturday I \_\_\_\_\_ shopping and I bought \_\_\_\_\_.
- Last weekend I \_\_\_\_\_ my homework at \_\_\_\_\_ o'clock on \_\_\_\_\_.
- Last year I \_\_\_\_\_ on holiday to \_\_\_\_\_.

6 Tell a partner what you did.



# EVERYDAY ENGLISH

## When's your birthday?

1 These are the months of the year. What is the correct order?

**T 9.14** Listen and check. Say the months round the class.

2 Which month is your birthday? Tell the class.

My birthday's in September.

So is my birthday!

How many birthdays are in each month?  
Which month has the most?

3 **T 9.15** Listen and repeat the numbers.

first (1st)      second (2nd)      third (3rd)

fourth (4th)      fifth (5th)      sixth (6th)

seventh (7th)      eighth (8th)      ninth (9th)

tenth (10th)      eleventh (11th)      twelfth (12th)

thirteenth (13th)      fourteenth (14th)      fifteenth (15th)

4 Say these numbers.

16th 17th 18th 19th 20th 21st 22nd 23rd  
24th 25th 26th 27th 28th 29th 30th 31st

**T 9.16** Listen and check.

5 **T 9.17** Listen and write the numbers. Practise them.

the \_\_\_\_\_ of January  
the \_\_\_\_\_ of March  
the \_\_\_\_\_ of April  
the \_\_\_\_\_ of May  
the \_\_\_\_\_ of June  
the \_\_\_\_\_ of August  
the \_\_\_\_\_ of November  
the \_\_\_\_\_ of December

**!** We say:  
the tenth of April  
We write:  
10 April  
April 10  
10/4/09  
Americans write:  
4/10/09

6 When is your birthday? Do you know the time you were born? Ask and answer in groups.

When's your birthday?

It's on the third of March.

What time were you born?

At two o'clock in the morning.

Tell the class.

I was born in 1982 on the twentieth of July at two o'clock in the morning.



# 10

## We had a great time!

Past Simple – regular and irregular • Questions and negatives •  
Sport and leisure • Going sightseeing

### STARTER

- 1 What day is it today? What day was it yesterday?
- 2 Match a sentence with a time expression.
- 3 What is the Past Simple of these irregular verbs?

We're at school  
I went to the US  
I did my homework

yesterday.  
now.  
in 2009.

get have go buy do see

### YESTERDAY WAS SUNDAY

Past Simple – regular and irregular

- 1 **T 10.1** Listen to Angie. Tick (✓) the things she did yesterday. What day was it?

#### GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Write the Past Simple of these regular verbs. What are the last two letters?

/t/ cook \_\_\_\_\_ watch \_\_\_\_\_

/d/ play \_\_\_\_\_ listen \_\_\_\_\_

/ɪd/ start \_\_\_\_\_ want \_\_\_\_\_

**T 10.2** Listen and repeat. Careful with the pronunciation of *-ed*.

- 2 The Past Simple is always the same.  
I/you/he/she/it/we/they **played**

► Grammar Reference 10.1 p127

#### Yesterday she ...

- ☒ got up late
- ☐ had a big breakfast
- ☐ played tennis
- ☐ went shopping
- ☐ bought some clothes
- ☐ stayed at home
- ☐ went for a walk
- ☐ cleaned her flat
- ☐ listened to the radio
- ☐ did some work
- ☐ saw some friends
- ☐ watched TV
- ☐ cooked a meal
- ☐ went to bed early

- 2 Tell the class what she did.

Yesterday she got up late and had ... Then she ...

- 3 Underline the things in the list that *you* did last Sunday. Tell a partner.

Last Sunday I got up ... and I went ... I saw ...





## Questions and negatives

- 1 It is Monday morning. Angie and Rose are at work.

**T 10.3** Listen and complete their conversation.



- A Hi, Rose. Did you have a good weekend?  
 R Yes, I did, thanks.  
 A What \_\_\_\_\_ you do yesterday?  
 R Well, I got up early and I \_\_\_\_\_ tennis with some friends.  
 A You \_\_\_\_\_ up early on Sunday!  
 R Well, yes, it was such a lovely day.  
 A Where \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ tennis?  
 R In the park. We \_\_\_\_\_ lunch in the café there.  
 A Oh, great! \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ out in the evening?  
 R No, I didn't. I \_\_\_\_\_ a meal for my sister.  
 A Mmm! What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_?  
 R Roast beef. It was delicious! What about you, Angie? Did *you* have a good weekend?

- 2 **T 10.4** Listen and repeat Angie's questions.

Did you **have** a good weekend?  
 What **did** you **do** yesterday?  
 Where **did** you **play** tennis?  
 Did you **go out** in the evening?  
 What **did** you **have**?

?

Work with a partner. Practise the conversation in exercise 1.

- 3 **T 10.5** Listen to Rose asking Angie about *her* weekend. Complete her questions.

- 1 What/do on Saturday? *What did you do on Saturday?*
- 2 Who/see at the restaurant?
- 3 ... go out/Sunday?
- 4 ... do anything/Sunday evening?

Listen again. What *did* Angie do?

- 4 **T 10.6** Listen and repeat. What *didn't* Angie do?

*I didn't go out because I was too tired*  
*I didn't do much on Sunday.*  
*I didn't go to bed late.*

- 5 Say three things Angie and Rose *didn't* do.

**Angie:** tennis/walk/radio **Rose:** late/shopping/TV  
 Angie *didn't* play tennis. Rose *didn't* get up late.

### GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Questions in the Past Simple use *did*. Complete the questions.

\_\_\_\_\_ you **go out**?  
 Where \_\_\_\_\_ she **go**?  
 What \_\_\_\_\_ you **do**?

- 2 Negatives use *didn't*. Complete the negatives.

They \_\_\_\_\_ **go** to work.  
 We \_\_\_\_\_ **watch** TV.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 10.2 p127

- 6 Work with a partner. Say what you did and didn't do last night.

What did you do last night?

I didn't do much.

I stayed at home.



## PRACTICE

### Grammar

1 Complete the sentences in the Past Simple.

- 1 I played (play) tennis on Sunday.
- 2 Yesterday we \_\_\_\_\_ (have) lunch in the park.
- 3 She \_\_\_\_\_ (do) her homework on the bus.
- 4 I \_\_\_\_\_ (not clean) my flat last weekend.
- 5 'Where \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) his new computer?'  
'He \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) it on the Internet.'
- 6 'What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (do) last night?'  
'I \_\_\_\_\_ (not go) out. I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to bed early.'

### Did you have a good weekend?

- 2 Look at the questionnaire. What activities are in the pictures?
- 3 Put a tick (✓) next to the things *you* did last weekend.
- 4 Ask your teacher the questions. Put a tick (✓) next to the things *she/he* did.

Did you go to the sports club?

Yes, I did./No, I didn't.

- 5 Ask a partner the questions. Put a tick (✓) next to the things *she/he* did.

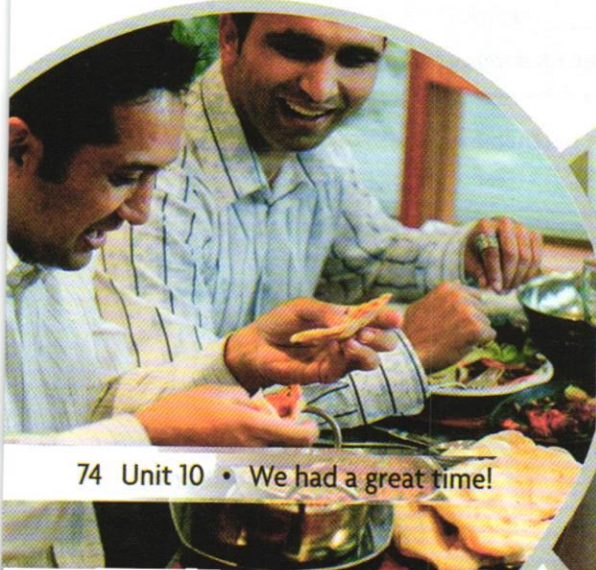
Tell the class about you and your partner.

Maria went to the sports club, but I didn't.  
I went shopping.



## questionnaire Last weekend

Did you ... ?	You	Teacher	Partner
go to the mall	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
go shopping	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
have a meal in a restaurant	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
see your friends	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
play football	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
watch TV/a film/a DVD	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
go to a picnic	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
do a lot of homework	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
do a lot of housework	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>





## Making conversation

6 We ask questions to show we are interested.

We went to the mall yesterday.

Oh, really? What did you buy?

Was it crowded?

Who was there?

Reply to these lines with a question.

1 'I went shopping yesterday.'

'Really? (Where/go?) Where did you go?'

2 'We went to that new Lebanese restaurant last night.'

'Mmm! (What/have?) \_\_\_\_\_?'

3 'We saw a lot of our friends in the coffee bar.'

'Oh! (Who/see?) \_\_\_\_\_?'

4 'I played tennis at the weekend.'

'Oh, really? (Where/play?) \_\_\_\_\_?'

5 'The picnic on Saturday was great!'

'Oh, good! (What time/leave?) \_\_\_\_\_?'

**T 10.7** Listen and check.

7 Work with a partner. Read the example conversation.

A I went shopping yesterday.

B Really? Where did you go?

A Oxford Street.

B Oh! What did you buy?

A Well, I wanted a new coat, and I went to the new mall.

B Did you find one?

A Yes, I did. I found a beautiful black one. It was only £50!

Choose one of the conversations in exercise 6 and make it longer.

**T 10.8** Listen and compare.

## Time expressions

8 Complete the time expressions using a word from the box.

at in on last

on Monday

\_\_\_\_\_ night

\_\_\_\_\_ 8 o'clock

\_\_\_\_\_ week

\_\_\_\_\_ 2007

\_\_\_\_\_ year

\_\_\_\_\_ Sunday morning

I went there ...

## Check it

9 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

1 ☐ She bought an expensive car.

☐ She buyed an expensive car.

2 ☐ I played tennis on Sunday.

☐ I play tennis on Sunday.

3 ☐ Did they went shopping yesterday?

☐ Did they go shopping yesterday?

4 ☐ What did you do last weekend?

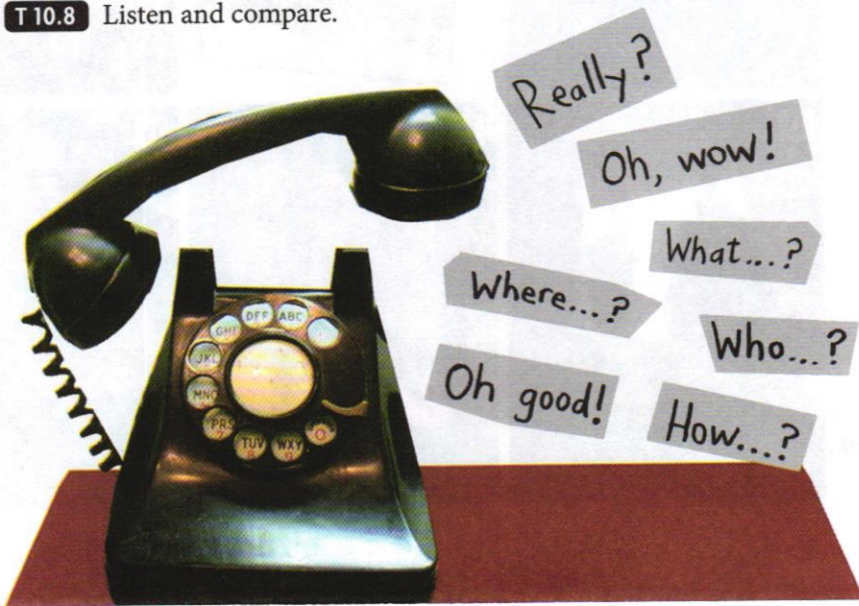
☐ What did you last weekend?

5 ☐ 'Did you like the DVD?' 'Yes, I liked.'

☐ 'Did you like the DVD?' 'Yes, I did.'

6 ☐ I saw John last night.

☐ I saw John on last night.





# VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

## Sport and leisure

1 What are the activities in the photos?

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 2 tennis | <input type="checkbox"/> computer games |
| <input type="checkbox"/> football            | <input type="checkbox"/> walking        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> skiing              | <input type="checkbox"/> swimming       |
| <input type="checkbox"/> golf                | <input type="checkbox"/> jogging        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> motor racing        | <input type="checkbox"/> cycling        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> windsurfing         | <input type="checkbox"/> fishing        |
| <input type="checkbox"/> rugby               | <input type="checkbox"/> horse-riding   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> ice-skating         |   |

2 Write the activities in the correct column.

*I play tennis. I go jogging.*

play	go + -ing
tennis	jogging

3 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about the activities.

Do you play tennis?

Yes, I do.

When did you last play?

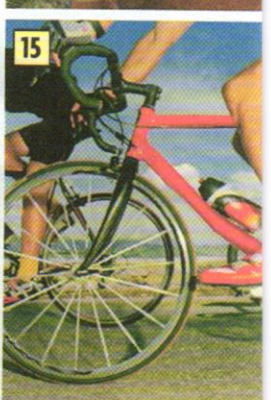
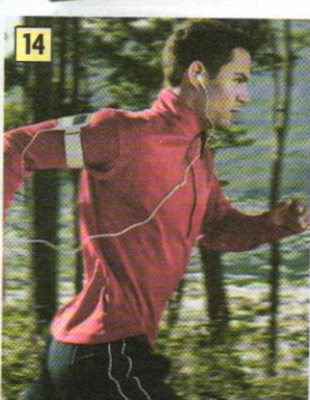
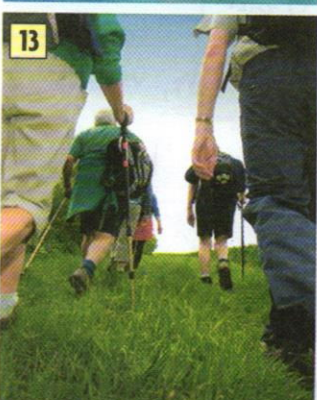
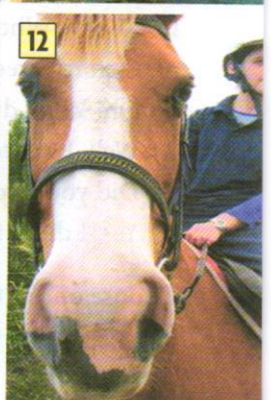
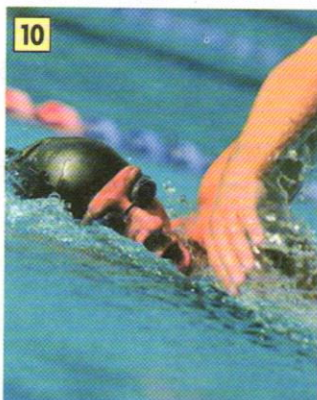
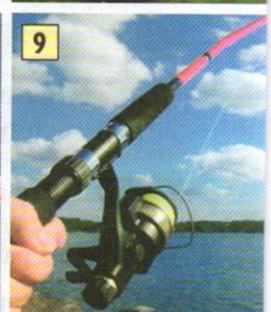
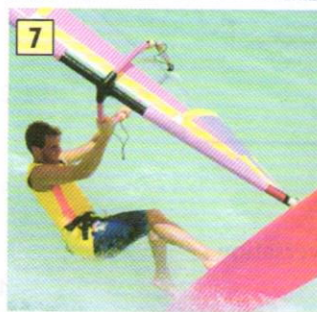
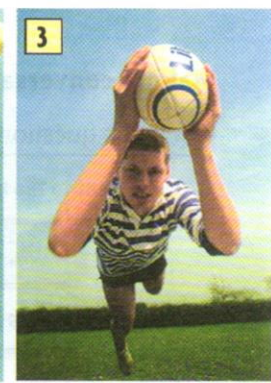
Last week.

Do you go jogging?

No, I don't.

4 Tell the class about your partner.

Molly doesn't play tennis, but she goes jogging.  
She went jogging in the park yesterday.





## LISTENING AND SPEAKING

### Jack and Millie Parker's holiday

1 Say the months of the year.

January February ...

In your country, what months are ...?

spring summer autumn winter

2 When do you usually go on holiday?

*I usually go on holiday in summer.*

3 **T 10.9** Listen to Jack and Millie Parker talking about their holidays. Underline what they say.

#### They usually ...

go in summer / spring.

go to Italy / India.

stay in a hotel / a villa.

eat at home / with friends.

go swimming / sailing.

play golf / read.

have / don't have a good time.

#### But last year they ...

went in autumn / winter.

went to Canada / Colorado.

stayed in a hotel / a house.

went out to restaurants / diners.

went skiing / jogging.

stayed in / went out every night.

had / didn't have a good time.

4 Ask and answer questions with a partner about Jack and Millie's holidays.

- When / go?
- Where / go?
- Where / stay?
- Where / eat?
- What / do?
- ... have a good time?

When do they usually go on holiday?

In summer.

When did they go last year?

In winter.

Where ... ?

5 Complete the sentences about their last holiday.

1 Last year Jack and Millie didn't go on holiday in summer.  
They went in winter.

2 They \_\_\_\_\_ to Italy. They \_\_\_\_\_ to Colorado.

3 They \_\_\_\_\_ in a hotel. They \_\_\_\_\_ in a villa.

4 They \_\_\_\_\_ at home. They \_\_\_\_\_ in restaurants.

5 They \_\_\_\_\_ skiing. They \_\_\_\_\_ swimming.

**T 10.10** Listen and check.





# SPEAKING AND WRITING

## My last holiday

- 1 What is your favourite kind of holiday?  
What do you like doing? ✓  
What don't you like doing? ✗

- ☐ eating in restaurants
- ☐ visiting relatives
- ☐ relaxing in the hotel
- ☐ going shopping
- ☐ driving in the mountains
- ☐ sightseeing in famous cities
- ☐ visiting museums
- ☐ playing sports

Compare your choices with a partner.

- 2 What did you do on your last holiday?  
Ask and answer questions with your partner.

- Where ... go?
- When ... go?
- Where ... stay?
- What ... do every day?
- ... have good weather?
- What ... do in the evening?
- What ... eat?
- ... meet nice people?

Where did you go?

I went to Jordan.

When did you go?

Last year. / Two years ago.

- 3 Tell the class about your partner.

Carl went sightseeing in Rome  
last June / six months ago.

### GRAMMAR SPOT

**ago**

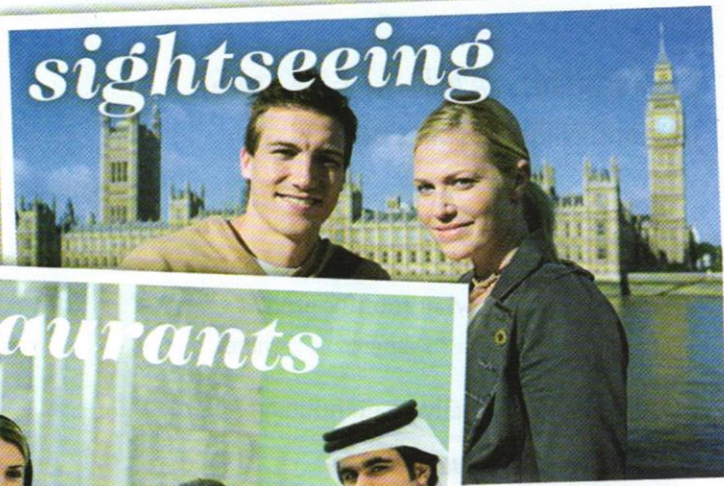
**two years ago** means *two years before now*.

I met James **ten years ago**.

I went to Oman **six weeks ago**.

Sally phoned **five minutes ago**.

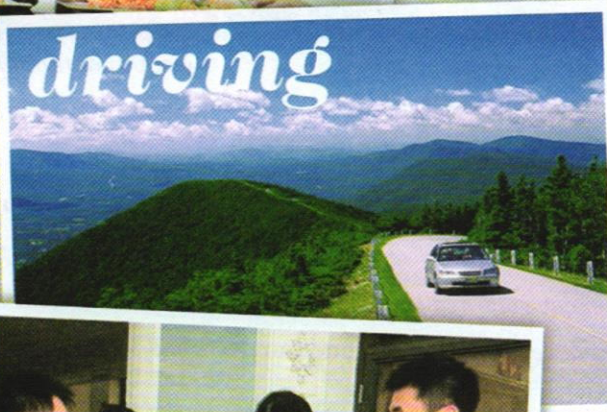
# sightseeing



# restaurants



# driving



# visiting relatives



### Writing

- 4 Write about your last holiday. Read it to the class.

#### My last holiday

Last ..., I went on holiday to ... I went with ... We stayed in ...

Every day we ... Sometimes we ... Once we ... We met ...

The food was ... and the weather was ...

We had a ... time.



# EVERYDAY ENGLISH

## Going sightseeing

- 1 Write the names of two cities and the dates when you were a tourist there.

London, July 2005. Dubai, April 2009.

Show a partner. Talk about the cities.

What did you do there? What did you see? What did you buy?

I went to ...

We visited ...

We saw ...

I bought ...

- 2 **T 10.11** Listen and complete the conversations in a Tourist Office.

1 A Hello. Can I \_\_\_\_\_?

B Yes. \_\_\_\_\_ have a map of the city, please?

A Of course. Here you are.

B Can you \_\_\_\_\_ where we are on the \_\_\_\_\_?

A Yes. We're \_\_\_\_\_ in Regent Street in the city \_\_\_\_\_.

2 C We want to go on a \_\_\_\_\_ tour of the \_\_\_\_\_.

A That's fine. The next bus \_\_\_\_\_ at 10 o'clock.

It \_\_\_\_\_ about an hour and a half.

C Where does the bus go from?

A It \_\_\_\_\_ Trafalgar Square, but you can get \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ when you want.

3 D I want to visit the British Museum. What time does it \_\_\_\_\_?

A It opens at 10 in the morning and \_\_\_\_\_ at 5.30 in the evening.

D \_\_\_\_\_ is it to get in?

A It's \_\_\_\_\_.

Work with a partner. Practise the conversations.

- 3 When people go sightseeing in your town, where do they go? What is there to do in your town?

We have a beautiful castle.

There's a park and a zoo.

Visitors go to the market/  
the old town / the square ...

## Roleplay

- 4 Roleplay a conversation in a Tourist Office with your partner.

### Student A

You are a tourist at the Tourist Office.

Ask for information.

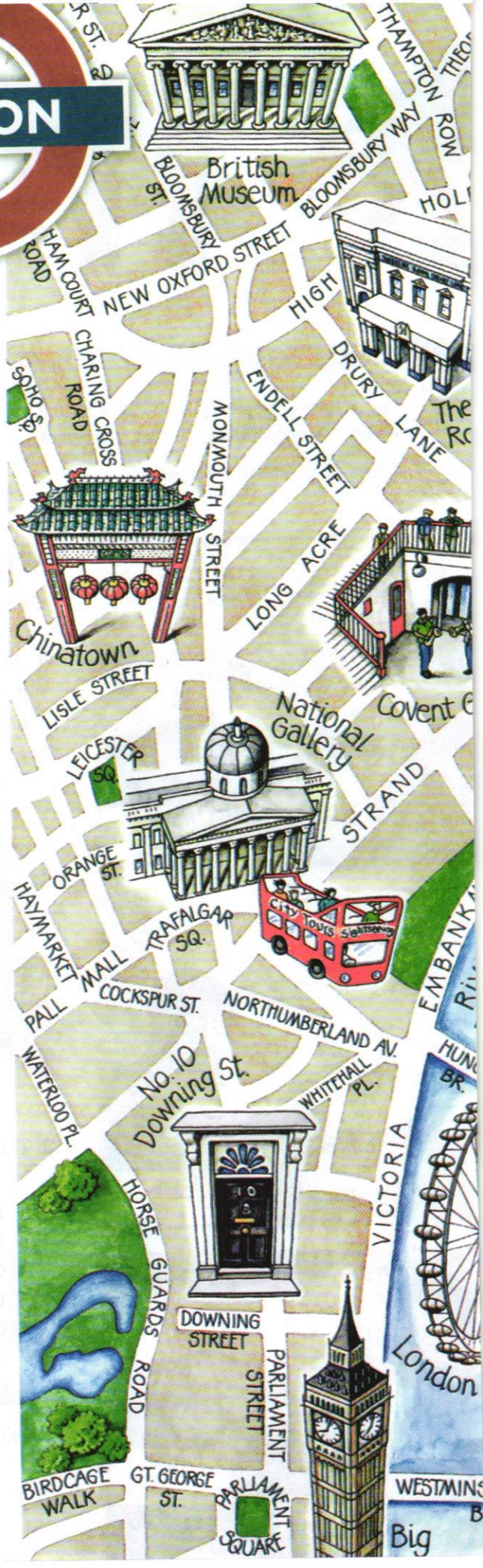
### Student B

You work in the Tourist Office in your home town.

Give information.

Hello. I want to go on a tour of the town ...  
see the exhibition ... visit the castle ...

That's fine. You can ...







# 11

## I can do that!

can/can't • Adverbs • Adjective + noun • Everyday problems

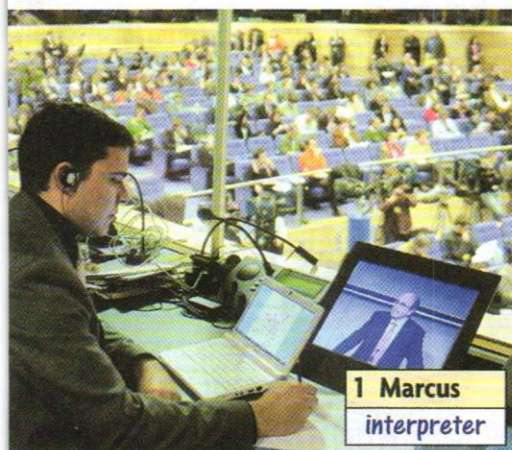


### STARTER

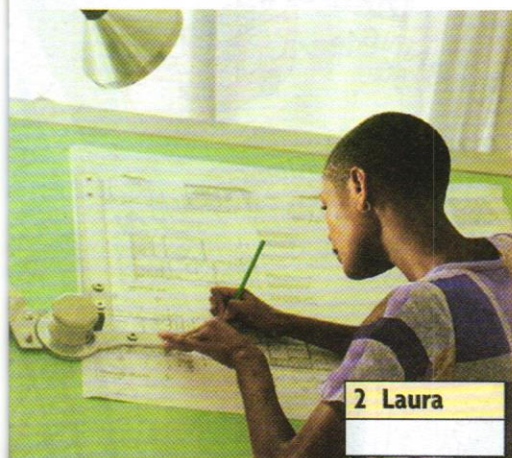
Do you have a computer? Do you use it for ...?

• work • the Internet • computer games • shopping • emails

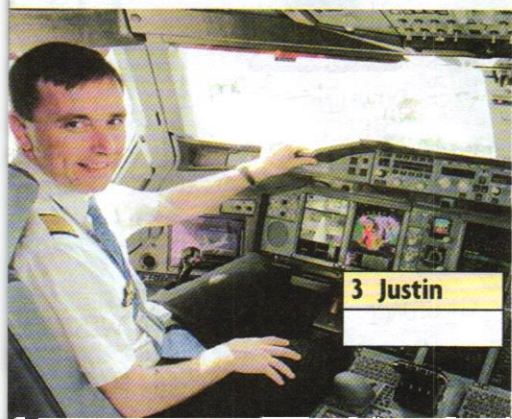
Talk to a partner. Tell the class.



1 Marcus  
interpreter



2 Laura



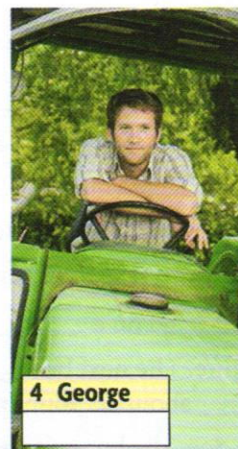
3 Justin

### WHAT CAN THEY DO?

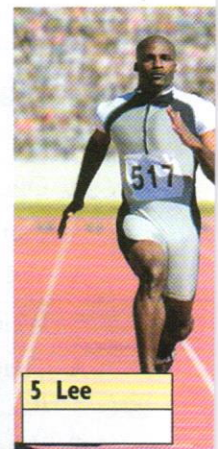
can/can't

1 Match the words and photos.

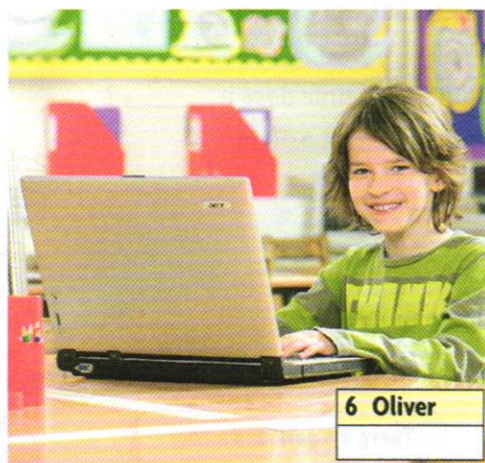
pilot farmer schoolboy athlete  
interpreter grandmother architect



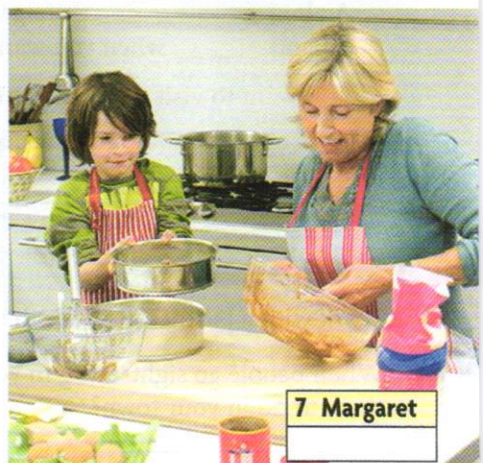
4 George



5 Lee



6 Oliver



7 Margaret

2 Complete the sentences with *a* or *an* and a word from exercise 1.

- Marcus is an interpreter. He can speak French and German fluently.
- Laura is \_\_\_\_\_. She can draw well.
- Justin is \_\_\_\_\_. He can fly 747 jumbo jets.
- George is \_\_\_\_\_. He can drive a tractor.
- Lee is \_\_\_\_\_. He can run very fast.
- Oliver is \_\_\_\_\_. He can use a computer really well.
- Margaret is Oliver's \_\_\_\_\_. She can make fantastic cakes.

**T 11.1** Listen and check. Practise the sentences.

3 Tell a partner what you can do from exercise 2.

I can use a computer  
and I can draw.



## Questions and negatives

- 1 **T 11.2** Listen and repeat the questions and answers.

Can Marcus **speak** French? Yes, he can.  
 Can you **speak** French? Yes, I can.  
 Can Laura **draw** well? Yes, she can.  
 Can you **draw** well? No, I can't. I can't draw at all!

?

- 2 Ask and answer more questions with a partner. First ask about the people, then ask about your partner.

Can Lee run fast? Yes, he can.

Can you run fast? No, I can't.

### GRAMMAR AND PRONUNCIATION

- 1 **Can/Can't** have the same form for all persons.

I / You / He / She / It / We / They **can** / **can't** draw.

- 2 **T 11.3** Listen and repeat the different pronunciations of **can** and **can't**.

/kən/ He **can** speak Spanish. /kɑ:nt/ They **can't** draw.

/kən/ Can you drive? /kæn/ Yes, I **can**.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 11.1–11.2 p128

## Of course I can!

- 3 **T 11.4** Read and listen to Oliver and Dominique. Complete the conversation.

**Dominique** Can you use a computer, Oliver?

**Oliver** Yes, of course I \_\_\_\_\_. All my friends can.  
 I \_\_\_\_\_ a computer at home in my bedroom and we use computers at \_\_\_\_\_ all the time.

**D** That's great. What other things can you \_\_\_\_\_?

**O** Well, I can \_\_\_\_\_ fast, very fast, and I can draw a bit. I can \_\_\_\_\_ really good cars but I \_\_\_\_\_ drive them of course! I can draw good planes, too. When I'm big I want to be a pilot and \_\_\_\_\_ 747s.

**D** Excellent. Now, I know you can speak French.

**O** Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_. I can speak French fluently because my dad's French. We sometimes \_\_\_\_\_ French at home.

**D** Can you speak any other languages?

**O** No, I \_\_\_\_\_. I can't speak German or Spanish, just French – and English of course! And I can cook! I can \_\_\_\_\_ cakes. My grandma makes fantastic cakes and I sometimes help her. Yesterday we made a big chocolate cake!



**T 11.4** Listen again and check. Practise the conversation with a partner.

- 4 Answer the questions about Oliver.

- What can Oliver do? What can't he do?
- Does he use a computer at school?
- What does he want to be when he's big?
- Why can he speak French well?
- What did he do yesterday?



# PRACTICE

## Pronunciation

1 **T 11.5** Listen and underline *can* or *can't*.

- 1 I can / can't ski quite well.
- 2 She can / can't speak German at all.
- 3 He can / can't speak English fluently.
- 4 Why can / can't you come to my house?
- 5 We can / can't understand our teacher.
- 6 They can / can't read.
- 7 Can / Can't I have an ice-cream, please?
- 8 Can / Can't cats swim?

**T 11.5** Listen again and repeat.

## She can speak Spanish very well!

2 **T 11.6** Jenni Spencer is English, but she lives in Argentina. Listen and tick (✓) the things she can do.

Can ... ?	Jenni	You	T	S
speak Spanish	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
speak German	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
speak English	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
ride a horse	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
play golf	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
cook	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

3 Complete Jenni's sentences with words from the box.

a little bit	really well	(not) at all
quite well	fluently	

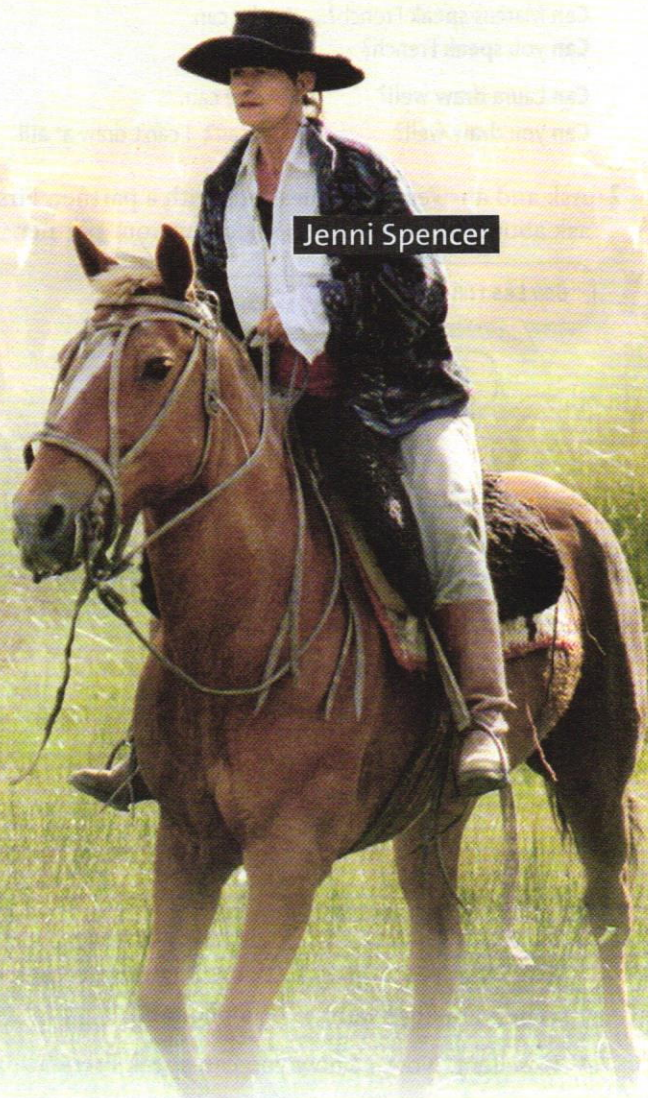
- 1 I can speak Spanish \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 I can speak German \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 My friends can speak English \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 I can ride \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 I can't cook \_\_\_\_\_.

**T 11.6** Listen again and practise the sentences.

### GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Adverbs can come after the verb.  
She can run **fast**. He plays golf **well**.
- 2 Regular adverbs end in *-ly*.  
She can speak Spanish **fluently**. Please speak **slowly**.

► Grammar Reference 11.3 p128



Jenni Spencer

## Talking about you

4 Complete the chart in exercise 2 about *you*. Then ask and answer the questions with the teacher and another student.

Can you speak Spanish?

A little bit. Can you?

I can't speak Spanish at all.

5 Compare yourself with the teacher and other students.

Isabel and I can ride a horse quite well.  
She can cook, too, but I can't cook at all.



# REQUESTS AND OFFERS

## Can I help you?

- Look at the pictures. Use the words to write questions with *Can ...* ?
- Match these answers with the questions in exercise 1.
  - 3 Sorry. I can't. It's my brother's wedding on Saturday.
  - \_\_\_ It's about three thirty.
  - \_\_\_ Yes, of course. Here you are.
  - \_\_\_ Yes, please. I want to buy this postcard.
  - \_\_\_ Oh, yes please! That's so kind of you!
  - \_\_\_ I'm sorry. Is this better? Can you understand me now?

**T 11.7** Listen and check.

- Practise the questions and answers with a partner. Continue the conversations.

Can you tell me the time, please?

It's about three thirty.

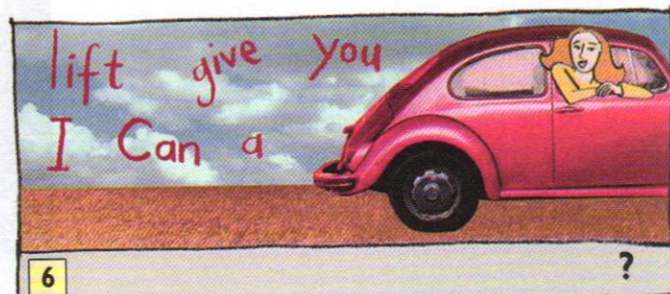
Thank you.

That's OK.

## Check it

- Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

- ☐ I no can understand.  
☐ I can't understand.
- ☐ He can drive a tractor.  
☐ He cans drive a tractor.
- ☐ Can you swim fast?  
☐ Do you can swim fast?
- ☐ We can to play tennis quite well.  
☐ We can play tennis quite well.
- ☐ You speak Italian very good.  
☐ You speak Italian very well.
- ☐ He plays very well the piano.  
☐ He plays the piano very well.





## READING AND LISTENING

### The Internet

- 1 What are these websites for?  
What does 'www' mean?

**www.bbc.co.uk**

**www.londontheatre.com**

**www.google.com**

**www.blogger.com**

**www.english.aljazeera.net**

**www.football365.com**

- 2 Match the verbs and nouns.

Verbs	Nouns
listen to	a newspaper
watch	a bill
play	an email
pay	friends
read	chess
chat to	a hotel
send	TV
book	the radio

Which of these things can you do on the Internet?

- 3 What do you know about the Internet?  
Discuss these questions.
- When did the Internet start?
  - Why did it start?
  - What can people do on the Internet?
- 4 **T 11.8** Read and listen to the text about the Internet. Answer the questions in exercise 3.
- 5 Are the sentences true (✓) or false (X)?  
Correct the false (X) sentences.
- 1 The Internet started in the 1970s.
  - 2 Telephone companies started it.
  - 3 It started in America.
  - 4 In the 1980s, scientists sent messages between computers.
  - 5 There is an international computer language.

# You can do more and more on the Internet!

## ► Its history

The Internet started in the 1960s. The United States Department of Defense started it because they wanted a computer network to help the American military. In the 1970s, scientists worked on it and learnt how to send messages between computers. Then in the 1980s, telephone companies made it possible to communicate on the computer network in many more countries. An international computer language was born, and the Net went worldwide.

## ► Millions of uses

**You can** use the Internet for millions of things.

**You can** 'google' for information about anything and everything; **you can** buy and sell clothes and cars; **you can** book a hotel, a holiday, or tickets for the cinema; **you can** pay your bills; **you can** watch your favourite TV programme; **you can** play chess with a partner in Moscow; **you can** 'chat' to your friends and share photographs on Flickr; **you can** write a blog about your life;

# You can ... the list is endless!





## What do you do on the Internet?

- 6 **T 11.9** Listen to the people. When and why do they use the Internet? Complete the information.



**Charlotte, 14**

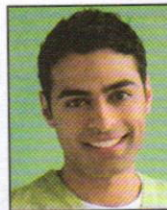
When? every day

Why? help with homework

**Lauren, 20**

When? \_\_\_\_\_

Why? \_\_\_\_\_



**Mike, 23**

When? \_\_\_\_\_

Why? \_\_\_\_\_

**Alan Krum, 47**

When? \_\_\_\_\_

Why? \_\_\_\_\_



**Max, 10**

When? \_\_\_\_\_

Why? \_\_\_\_\_

**Edna, 71**

When? \_\_\_\_\_

Why? \_\_\_\_\_



**T 11.9** Listen again and check.

- 7 'The list is endless!'

Work in groups. What different things do you use the Internet for? What are your favourite websites? Tell the class.

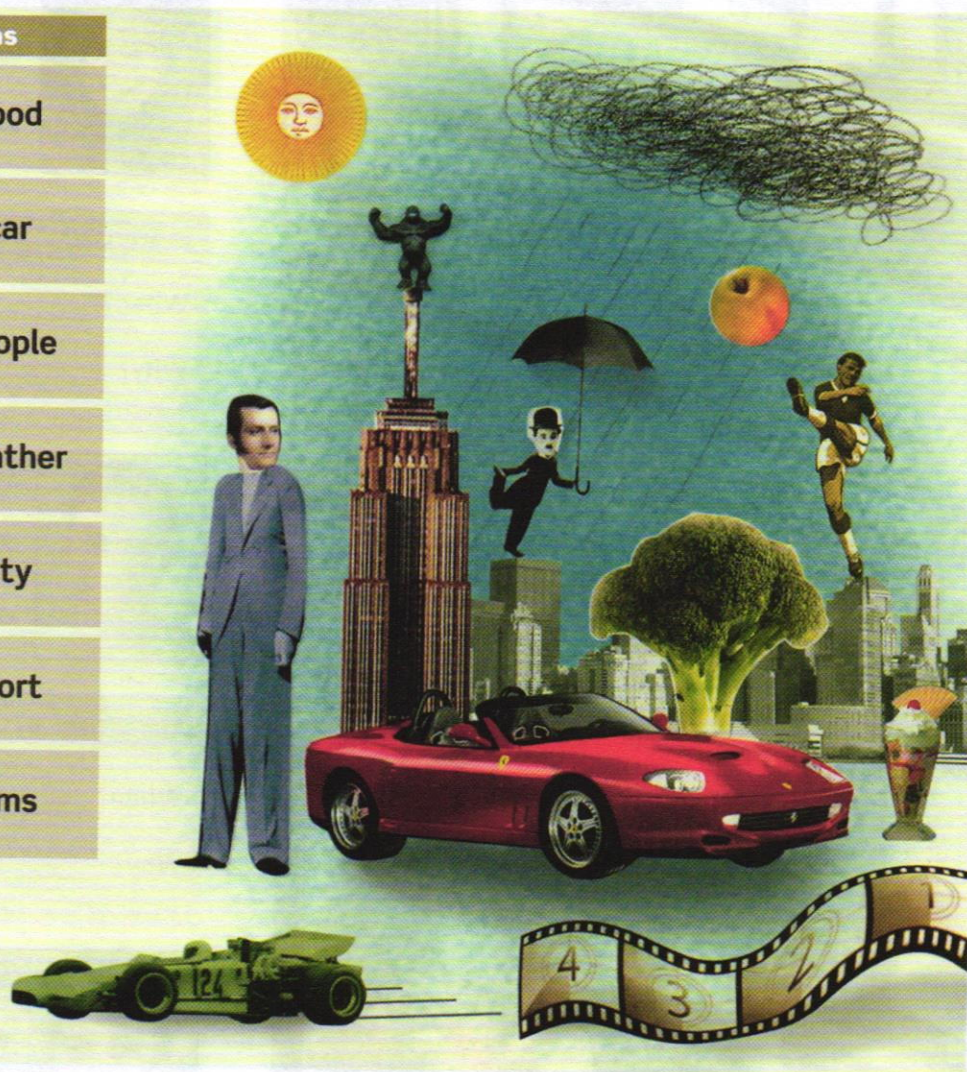


# VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

## Adjective + noun

1 Work with a partner. Match the groups of adjectives with the nouns.

Adjectives	Nouns
old	food
young	car
tall	people
fast	weather
expensive	city
delicious	sport
fresh	films
big	
busy	
cosmopolitan	
dangerous	
exciting	
funny	
interesting	
boring	
warm and sunny	
cold and wet	



2 Complete the sentences with words from exercise 1. Compare answers with a partner.

- 1 A Ferrari is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 'How \_\_\_\_\_ is your brother?'  
'He's very \_\_\_\_\_, 1.9 metres.'
- 3 I think motor racing is a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Can I have a \_\_\_\_\_ orange juice, please?
- 5 New York is a very \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Charlie Chaplin made some very \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 We can't go for a walk. It's too \_\_\_\_\_.

**T 11.10** Listen and compare. Look at the tapescript on p120 and practise the conversations.

3 Work in groups. Think of examples of these things.

- an expensive car and a cheap car
- a dangerous sport and a safe sport
- an old city and a modern city
- an old film star and a young film star
- a funny film and a boring film

Compare your lists.

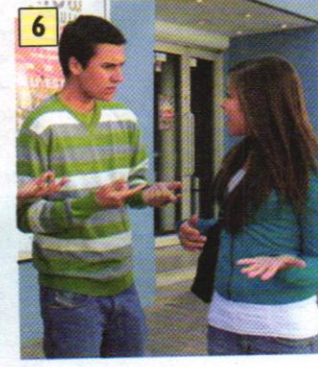
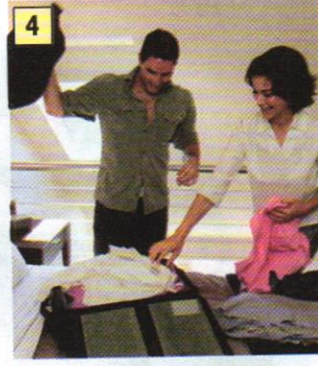
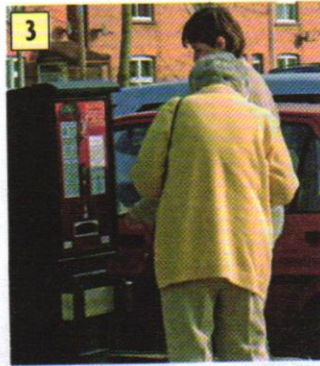
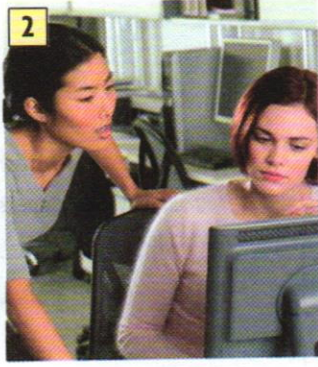


# EVERYDAY ENGLISH

## Everyday problems

1 Look at the pictures. Who has a problem with ... ?

- ☒ 2 computers    ☐ directions    ☐ a ticket machine  
☐ arriving late    ☐ a lost passport    ☐ an accident



2 Match the lines with the pictures.

- ☒ 4 I can't find it anywhere!  
☐ This machine doesn't work!  
☐ I'm lost!  
☐ I'm so sorry I'm late!  
☐ I can't get on the Internet!  
☐ Are you all right?

3 T 11.11 Listen and complete the conversations.

- 1 A Excuse me! Can you help me? I'm \_\_\_\_\_!  
 B Where do you \_\_\_\_\_ to go?  
 A Grand Central Station.  
 B Turn left onto Park Avenue. It's \_\_\_\_\_ on.  
 You \_\_\_\_\_ miss it.

- 2 A Oh no!  
 B What's the \_\_\_\_\_?  
 A There's something \_\_\_\_\_ with my computer. I can't \_\_\_\_\_ the Internet, so I can't send my emails.  
 B Turn everything off and try \_\_\_\_\_.  
 That sometimes \_\_\_\_\_.

- 3 A Excuse me! This ticket machine \_\_\_\_\_.  
 B Did you \_\_\_\_\_ the green button?  
 A Oh! No, I didn't.  
 B Ah, well. Here's your \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A Thank you very much.

- 4 A Come on! It's time to go to the airport.  
 B But I \_\_\_\_\_ my passport! I can't find it anywhere!  
 A You \_\_\_\_\_ it in your bag.  
 B Did I? Oh, yes. \_\_\_\_\_ it is! Phew!

- 5 A Are you \_\_\_\_\_?  
 B Yes, I think so.  
 A Does your arm hurt?  
 B It hurts \_\_\_\_\_, but I think it's OK.

- 6 A I'm so sorry \_\_\_\_\_.  
 B It's OK. The film \_\_\_\_\_ in 15 minutes.  
 A I missed the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 B I told you, it doesn't \_\_\_\_\_. Come on!  
 Let's go.

T 11.11 Listen and check. Practise the conversations.

- 4 Learn two conversations and say them in front of the class.





# 12

## Please and thank you

I'd like – some/any • In a restaurant • Signs all around



### STARTER

1 Match the activities and the places. What can you do where?

Activities	Places
1 <u>g</u> buy newspapers and magazines	a post office
2 ___ buy bread, milk, fruit, and meat	b bookshop
3 ___ change your money	c bank
4 ___ buy stamps and send a parcel	d chemist's
5 ___ buy a dictionary	e supermarket
6 ___ get an espresso	f coffee shop
7 ___ buy shampoo and conditioner	g newsagent's

2 Make sentences with *You can ...*

*You can buy newspapers and magazines in a newsagent's.*

**T 12.1** Listen and check.

### SAYING WHAT YOU WANT

*I'd like ... , some and any*

1 **T 12.2** Listen to Adam and complete the conversations. Where is he?

- 1 A Good \_\_\_\_\_. I'd like some chicken, please.  
 B How much would you like?  
 A \_\_\_\_\_ slices.  
 B Would you like anything else?  
 A Yes, I'd like some cheese. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ any Emmental?  
 B I'm afraid we \_\_\_\_\_ have any Emmental. What about mozzarella?  
 A No, thank you. Just the chicken, then. \_\_\_\_\_ much is that?



- 2 C Can I help you?  
 A Yes, please, I'd \_\_\_\_\_ like some shampoo.  
 C We have lots. Would you \_\_\_\_\_ it for dry or normal hair?  
 A Dry, I think.  
 C OK. Try this one. \_\_\_\_\_ else?  
 A Er – oh yeah. I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ conditioner.  
 I'd like \_\_\_\_\_ conditioner for dry hair, please.  
 C Yes, of course. That's £6.90, please.



**T 12.2** Listen again and check. Practise the conversations.



## GRAMMAR SPOT

### would like

- 1 *I'd like ...* is more polite than *I want ...*  
I'd like some chicken, please.
- 2 We offer things with *Would you like ... ?*  
Would you like anything else?

### some and any

- 1 We use *some* in positive sentences.  
I'd like **some** cheese.
- 2 We use *any* with questions and negatives.  
Do you have **any** mozzarella?  
We don't have **any** mozzarella.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 12.1–12.2 p128

- 2 **T 12.3** Listen to two more conversations with Adam.

	Conversation 1	Conversation 2
Where is he?		
What does he want?		
What are his words?	I'd like ...	

- 3 Adam has a visitor. Complete their conversations.

- 1 **A** What **would** you \_\_\_\_\_ to drink?  
**V** A juice. I'\_\_\_\_\_ an apple juice, please.  
**A** Er ... I have \_\_\_\_\_ orange juice, but I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ apple juice.  
**V** Don't worry. Orange juice is fine. Thanks.

- 2 **A** \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ something to eat?  
**V** Yeah, OK. A sandwich. A cheese sandwich?  
**A** Er ... I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ cheese. Sorry. I have \_\_\_\_\_ chicken. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ a chicken sandwich?  
**V** I don't like chicken.  
**A** \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ some cake, then?  
**V** Yes, please. I'd love \_\_\_\_\_.

- T 12.4** Listen and check. Practise the conversations.

## Roleplay

- 4 You have a friend at your house. Make him or her feel at home! Offer some of these things.

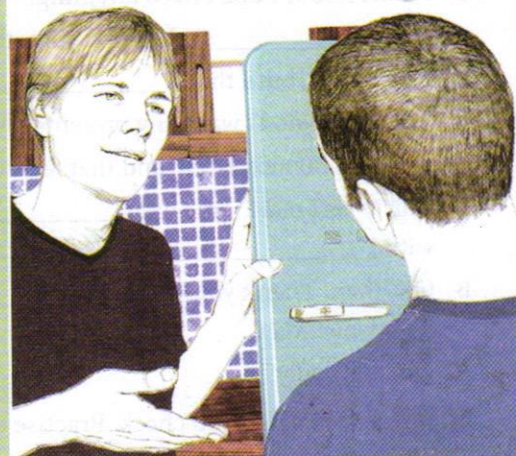
- a cold drink
- a coffee
- something to eat
- a glass of fruit juice
- some ice-cream

Would you like a cold drink?

Yes, please.

What would you like?

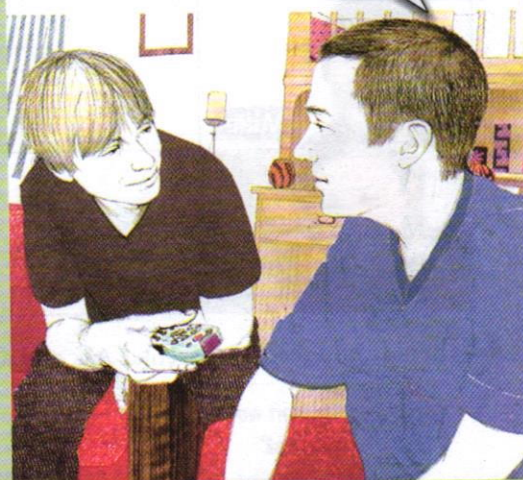
An orange juice, please.



- watch the football
- listen to the radio
- watch TV
- see the garden
- play some computer games

Would you like to watch the football?

Yes, I'd love to!





## PRACTICE

### It's my birthday!

1 **T 12.5** Listen to the conversation.

What does the woman want to do? Why is the other woman *not* happy?

2 Read and complete the conversation with words from the box.

would you like    I'd like    I'd like to (x3)    some

A Hey, isn't it your birthday soon?

B Yeah, next week on the 15th.

A So, what \_\_\_\_\_ for your birthday?

B I don't know. I don't need anything.

A But \_\_\_\_\_ buy you something.

B That's kind, but I think \_\_\_\_\_ forget my birthday this year.

A What? You don't want any presents! Why not?

B Well, I'm 30 next week, and that feels old.

A Thirty isn't old. Come on! \_\_\_\_\_ take you out for a meal with \_\_\_\_\_ friends. You can choose the restaurant.




B OK, then. Thank you. \_\_\_\_\_ that. Just don't tell anyone it's my birthday.

A Oh, that's silly!

**T 12.5** Listen again and check. Practise the conversation.

### Birthday wishes

3 **T 12.6** Listen to three people. It's their birthday soon. Complete the chart.

What would they ...	like for a present?	like to do in the evening?
 Kelly		
 Mike		
 Jade		



4 When do you receive presents? Ask and answer questions about what *you'd* like.

What present would you like?

I'd like an iPod, and some new clothes, ...

How about you? What would you like?



## like and would like

- 1 What's the difference between these sentences?

*I like fruit juice.      I'd like a fruit juice.*

- 2 **T 12.7** Read and listen to the two conversations. Which conversation is about what you like day after day? Which is about what you want to do soon?

- 1 A What do you like doing in your free time?  
B I like going to the mall, and I like playing computer games.  
A Do you like playing ...?

- 2 C What would you like to do this weekend?  
D I'd like to go out. What about you?  
C Great! Would you like to go to the mall?  
D I'd love to!

Practise the conversations with a partner.

### GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 *Like* refers to **always**.  
I **like** tea.  
I **like** going to the mall.
- 2 *'d like* refers to **now** or **soon**.  
I'd **like** a cup of tea, please.  
I'd **like to** go to the mall today.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 12.3 p128

## Talking about you

- 3 Work with a partner. Make conversations.

What do you like doing in your free time?

I like ... and I like ... What about you?

What would you like to do this weekend?

Well, I'd like to ... What about you?

## Listening and pronunciation

- 4 **T 12.8** Listen to the conversations. Tick (✓) the sentences you hear.

- 1 ☒ Would you like a coffee?  
☐ Do you like coffee?
- 2 ☐ I like watching films.  
☐ I'd like to watch a film.
- 3 ☐ We like flats with big bedrooms.  
☐ We'd like a flat with two bedrooms.
- 4 ☐ What would you like to do?  
☐ What do you like doing?
- 5 ☐ I like new clothes.  
☐ I'd like some new clothes.

Look at **T 12.8** on p121 and practise the conversations.

## Check it

- 5 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

- 1 ☐ I like leave early today.  
☐ I'd like to leave early today.
- 2 ☐ Do you like your job?  
☐ Would you like your job?
- 3 ☐ Would you like tea or coffee?  
☐ You like tea or coffee?
- 4 ☐ I'd like any tea, please.  
☐ I'd like some tea, please.
- 5 ☐ They like something to eat.  
☐ They'd like something to eat.
- 6 ☐ I don't have any money.  
☐ I don't have some money.

play computer games

watch football

go fishing

sleep a lot

see a film

go shopping

eat in a restaurant





## READING AND SPEAKING

### You are what you eat

#### 1 Match the food and the pictures.

chicken fish salad yogurt seafood  
eggs rice bread breakfast cereal



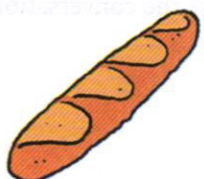
1



2



3



4



5



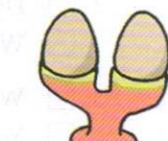
6



7



8



9

#### 2 Work in three groups.

**Group A** Read about **MASUMI TAKAHASHI**.

**Group B** Read about **CAROLINE WELTY**.

**Group C** Read about **FAHD AL QAHTANI**.

Answer the questions.

- Which food in exercise 1 does he/she eat?
- What does he/she have for breakfast, lunch, and dinner?
- What time does he/she eat?
- What does he/she like doing? When? Where?
- What would he/she like to do?
- Does he/she do any exercise?

#### 3 Find a student from the other two groups. Compare and swap information.

#### What do you think?

- Do all three people have a good diet? Do they eat a lot?
- What do you eat in a day? When?
- Would you like the food they eat in Japan/New York/Saudi Arabia?
- What suggestions can you make for a good diet?

Eat lots of fruit.

Don't have too much sugar.



MASUMI TAKAHASHI, JAPAN

**Name:** Masumi Takahashi

**Age:** 50

**Lives:** Tokyo, Japan

**Works:** In a bank



In Japan we eat rice at every meal.  
For breakfast, we have rice, fish, and soup.

At 12.00 I have *bento*, which is a lunch box.  
My wife makes this for me every day.  
There are small dishes of rice, fish,  
vegetables, eggs, and sometimes meat.

In the evening, we have more fish, maybe  
with beans. I'd like to eat with my children,  
but I don't get home till 9.00.

At the weekend, we like doing things  
together. We go for walks, and have dinner.  
We eat lots of small dishes. We don't put  
a lot of food on our plate, so we don't eat  
too much.



# What's on your plate?

Three people from different parts of the world describe what they eat each day.

## CAROLINE WELTY, US

**Name:** Caroline Welty  
**Age:** 29  
**Lives:** Brooklyn, New York  
**Works:** In a restaurant



I eat little and early. I have toast and cereal for breakfast, and salad for lunch at about 11.30. For dinner I usually eat chicken, fish or seafood. If I have a snack between meals, it's always fruit.

I ride my bike to work across Brooklyn Bridge, and run 10 kilometres a day. I'd like to run the New York Marathon this year. I'm a waitress, so I'm on my feet all day.

Too many people in this country don't eat right. They say they don't have time to buy food and cook, so they snack all the time.

At home I like cooking for friends. For me the dinner table is the centre of the home.

## FAHD AL QAHTANI, SAUDI ARABIA

**Name:** Fahd Al Qahtani  
**Age:** 32  
**Lives:** Riyadh, Saudi Arabia  
**Works:** In a hospital



For breakfast I have bread with cheese, eggs, yogurt and tea. Lunch is at 2.30. It is usually a big meal, with lots of different dishes. Perhaps some chicken or fish with rice – 'kabsa' – vegetables, hummus and tomato sauce. We drink fruit juice or water with the meal.

We have dinner at 8. Traditionally the evening meal was much smaller than lunch, but now it is the big meal of the day. Of course during Ramadan we eat just two meals, one before dawn, and one after sunset.

I'd like to eat out more often but I don't have time. I live near the hospital so I like walking to work. It's my only exercise!



## VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

### In a restaurant

- 1 Read the menu. What do you like on the menu? What don't you like? Tell a partner.

I like ... and ... I don't like ... or ...

- 2 **T 12.9** Listen to Liam and Maddy ordering a meal in the CAFÉ FRESCO.

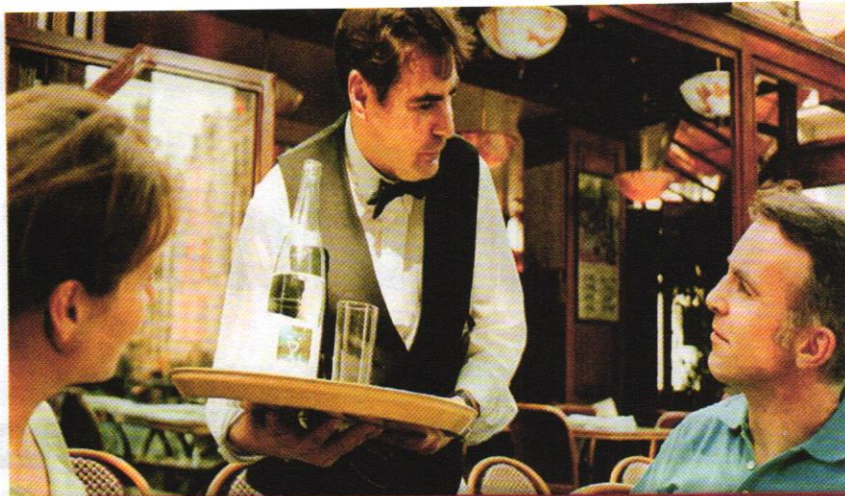
Who says these things? Write L (Liam), M (Maddy), or W (Waiter).

- W** Are you ready to order?
- Well, I am. Are you ready, Maddy?
- Yes, I am. What's the soup of the day?
- French onion soup.
- Lovely. I'd like the French onion soup to start, please.
- And to follow?
- I'd like the salmon salad with some chips on the side.
- Thank you. And you, sir? What would you like?
- Er – I'd like the tomato and mozzarella salad, followed by the burger and chips.
- Would you like any side orders?
- No, thank you. Just the burger.
- And to drink?
- Sparkling water for me, please. What about you, Liam?
- The same for me. We'd like a bottle of sparkling water, please.
- Fine. I'll bring the drinks immediately.

- 3 Practise the conversation in groups of three.

### Roleplay

- 4 Work in groups of three. Roleplay being customers and waiters in a restaurant.



## CAFÉ FRESCO

### STARTERS

Soup of the day	£4.25
Tomato and mozzarella salad	£5.95

### MAINS

Burger and chips	£7.25
Fish and chips	£10.25
Salmon salad	£10.95
Spaghetti Bolognese	£9.25
Pizza Margherita	£7.95

### SANDWICHES

Chicken and salad	£6.50
Cheese and tomato	£5.95
Egg mayonnaise	£5.95

### SIDE ORDERS

Chips	£2.50
Mixed salad	£3.75
Mixed green vegetables	£2.00

### DESSERTS

Chocolate cake	£3.85
Apple pie and ice-cream	£3.85

### DRINKS

Mineral water, still or sparkling	£1.85		
Cola	£2.85	Fruit juice	£2.25
Coffee	£2.00	Tea	£1.65

OPEN 11AM TILL 11PM



## EVERYDAY ENGLISH

### Signs all around

1 Look at the signs. Where can you see them?



2 Which sign means ...?

- |                                  |  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|--|
| 1 <u>f</u> You can go in here.   | 6 ___ Push this door to open it.         | 11 ___ You can buy something cheap here. |
| 2 ___ You can go out here.       | 7 ___ Pull this door to open it.         | 12 ___ Stand and wait here.              |
| 3 ___ You can't sit here.        | 8 ___ Men can go to the toilet here.     | 13 ___ Not open.                         |
| 4 ___ You can't smoke here.      | 9 ___ You can go up or down floors here. | 14 ___ / ___ You can't go in here.       |
| 5 ___ This machine doesn't work. | 10 ___ Women can go to the toilet here.  |  |

3 **T 12.10** Listen to the lines of conversation. Which sign do they go with?

1 \_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_ 6 \_\_\_ 7 \_\_\_ 8 \_\_\_

4 Work with a partner. Write a conversation that goes with a sign. Act it to the class. Can they identify the correct sign?



# 13

## Here and now

Colours and clothes • Present Continuous • Opposite verbs • What's the matter?

### STARTER

1 What are the colours? Write the colours from the box.

blue	red	green
black	white	yellow
brown	grey	



1 red 2 \_\_\_\_\_



3 \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_



5 \_\_\_\_\_ 6 \_\_\_\_\_



7 \_\_\_\_\_ 8 \_\_\_\_\_

What is your favourite colour?  
Tell the class.

2 What are the clothes? Write words from the box.

a jacket	trousers	shoes and socks	a scarf	a jumper	boots
trainers	a suit	a shirt and tie	a skirt	a dress	a T-shirt and shorts



1 a jumper



2 \_\_\_\_\_



3 \_\_\_\_\_



4 \_\_\_\_\_



5 \_\_\_\_\_



6 \_\_\_\_\_



7 \_\_\_\_\_



8 \_\_\_\_\_



9 \_\_\_\_\_



10 \_\_\_\_\_



11 \_\_\_\_\_



12 \_\_\_\_\_

**T 13.1** Listen and repeat.

3 What clothes can you see in the classroom? What colour are they?

Lillian's skirt is black.

Roberto's shirt is blue.

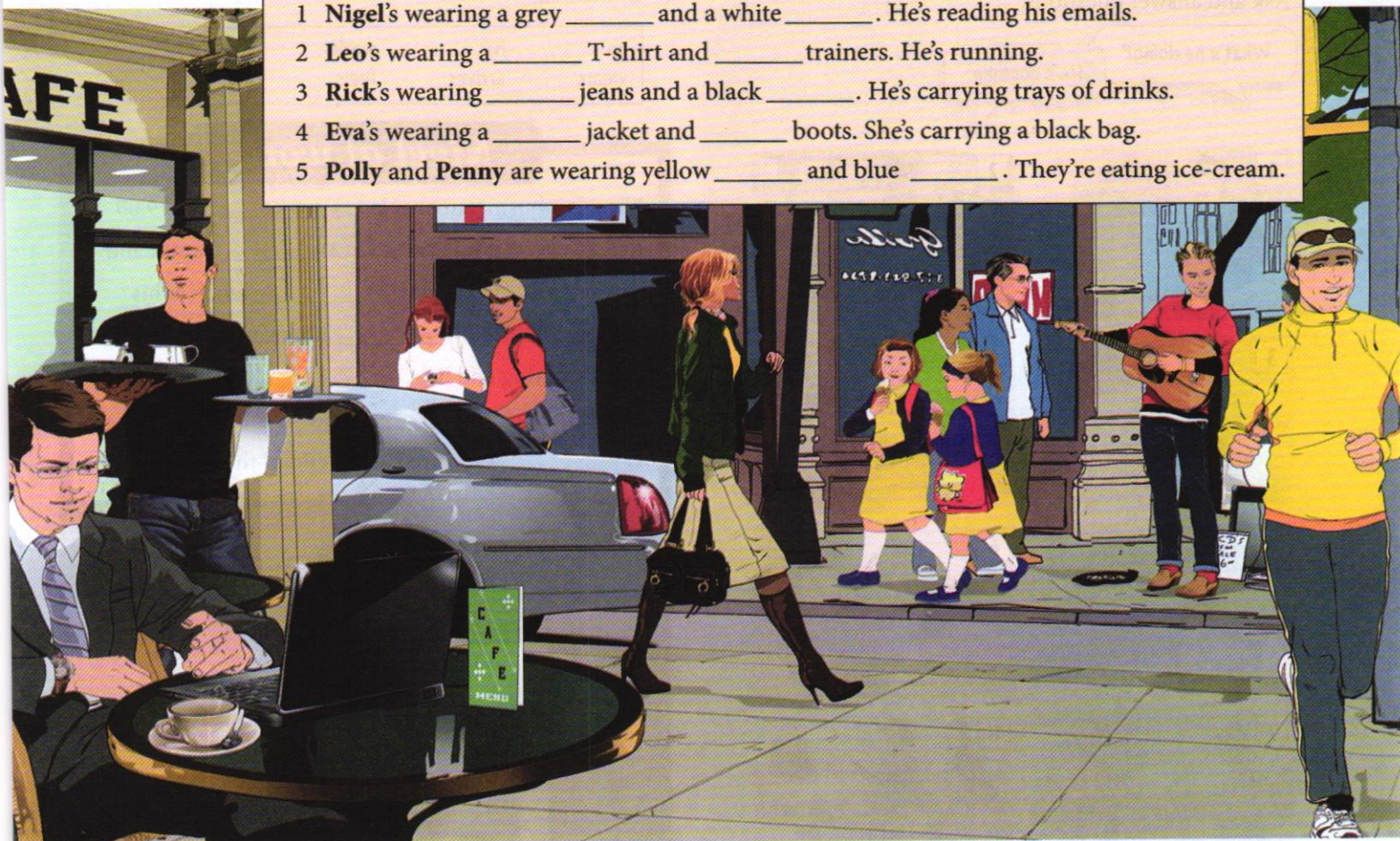


# WHAT ARE THEY WEARING?

## Present Continuous

1 Look at the pictures. Complete the descriptions with the colours and clothes.

- 1 Nigel's wearing a grey \_\_\_\_\_ and a white \_\_\_\_\_. He's reading his emails.
- 2 Leo's wearing a \_\_\_\_\_ T-shirt and \_\_\_\_\_ trainers. He's running.
- 3 Rick's wearing \_\_\_\_\_ jeans and a black \_\_\_\_\_. He's carrying trays of drinks.
- 4 Eva's wearing a \_\_\_\_\_ jacket and \_\_\_\_\_ boots. She's carrying a black bag.
- 5 Polly and Penny are wearing yellow \_\_\_\_\_ and blue \_\_\_\_\_. They're eating ice-cream.



T 13.2 Listen and check. Practise the sentences.

### GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 The **Present Continuous** describes what is happening **now**.  
He's **reading** his emails.  
They're **eating** ice-cream.  
I'm **sitting** in the classroom.
- 2 We make the **Present Continuous** with the verb to be: *am/is/are + verb + -ing*. Complete the sentences.  
I'm **studying** \_\_\_\_\_ (study) English.  
You/We/They \_\_\_\_\_ (wear) jeans.  
She/He \_\_\_\_\_ (play) in the garden.

► Grammar Reference 13.1 p129

2 Work with a partner. Describe someone in the room. Who is it?

He's wearing a white shirt, blue jeans. He's sitting next to me.

It's Ali!

3

I'm wearing blue jeans and a black T-shirt.

4 T 13.3 Listen and repeat the questions.

What's he wearing? What's she doing? What are they doing?

Ask and answer the questions about the pictures with a partner.

What's Nigel wearing?

A grey suit and ...

What's he doing?

He's ...



## PRACTICE

### Asking questions

- 1 Work with a partner. What are the people doing?  
Ask and answer questions.

What's he doing?

He's cooking.



**T 13.4** Listen and check. What extra information do you hear?

- 2 Mime actions to your partner. Can your partner guess what you are doing?

You're cooking!

Yes, I am. I'm making a cake.

You're playing tennis!

No, I'm not. I'm playing golf.

## HE'S ON HOLIDAY AT THE MOMENT

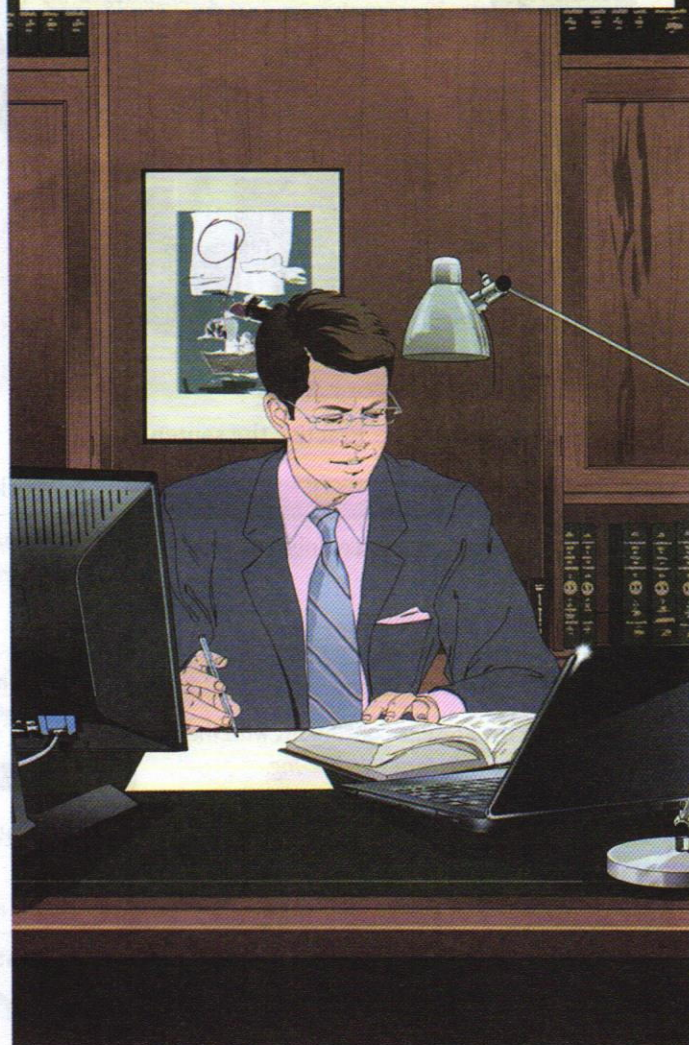
### Present Simple and Present Continuous

- 1 Read about Nigel. Complete the text with the verbs in the box.

go	has	<del>works</del>	reads
wears	arrives	feels	

### Nigel at work

Nigel is a businessman. He (1) works from 9.00 to 5.30 every day. He always (2) \_\_\_\_\_ a suit and tie for work. He usually (3) \_\_\_\_\_ lunch at his desk at 1.00. He (4) \_\_\_\_\_ home at about 7.00 every evening and he (5) \_\_\_\_\_ to his children before they (6) \_\_\_\_\_ to bed. He often (7) \_\_\_\_\_ very tired at the end of the day.



**T 13.5** Listen and check.



- 2 Nigel and his family are on holiday in Spain. Nigel is talking with his boss, Bill, on his mobile phone.

**T 13.6** Listen to and read the conversation.



## Nigel on holiday

**Nigel** Hello.

**Bill** Nigel, it's Bill, sorry to call you about work.

**N** Oh, hi Bill! That's OK.

**B** First things first, **are you having** a good time?

**N** Yes, we are. **We're having** a great time.

**B** **Are you staying** in a hotel?

**N** No, we're not. **We're staying** in a house with a swimming pool near the beach.

**B** Wonderful. And your family? **Are they enjoying** it?

**N** Oh, yes. The kids **are swimming** in the pool right now. Can you hear them?

**B** I can. And **are you and your wife relaxing**?

**N** We are. **We're sitting** by the pool. Karen's **drinking** lemonade, and I'm **reading** a lot. And I'm **not wearing** a suit and tie, just shorts and a T-shirt.

**B** You're lucky. It's **raining** again here. Now, I'm **calling** about work ...

**N** OK Bill, what's the problem?

**B** Well ...

## GRAMMAR SPOT

Read the sentences.

He **wears** a suit for work.

He's **wearing** a T shirt.

Which sentence is about *now*?

Which is true day after day but *not now*?

▶▶ Grammar Reference 13.2 p129

- 3 How many true sentences can you make about Nigel's holiday? Compare with your partner.

Nigel		enjoying the holiday.
Karen	is	talking to Bill.
Bill	isn't	calling Nigel.
The children	are	staying in a hotel.
It	are	wearing a suit.
They	aren't	raining in Spain.
		swimming in the pool.
		relaxing.

- 4 Work with a partner. Ask and answer the questions about Nigel's holiday.

1 Are they ... a good time?

Are they having a good time?

2 Where ... staying?

3 What ... the children doing?

4 What ... Karen doing?

Yes, they are.

5 What ... Nigel doing?

6 Is he ... a suit?

7 Why ... Bill calling?

**T 13.7** Listen and check.

- 5 Complete the sentences with the verbs in the Present Simple or Present Continuous.

1 Nigel lives (live) in a house in London, but now he 's staying (stay) in a house by the sea.

2 He usually \_\_\_\_\_ (wear) a suit, but today he \_\_\_\_\_ (wear) shorts.

3 He never \_\_\_\_\_ (relax) at work, but now he \_\_\_\_\_ (relax) by the pool.

4 Karen \_\_\_\_\_ (work) in a shop, but today she \_\_\_\_\_ (enjoy) her holiday.

5 The children \_\_\_\_\_ (work) hard at school but today they \_\_\_\_\_ (swim) in the pool.

6 It often \_\_\_\_\_ (rain) in England and it \_\_\_\_\_ (rain) there now.



## PRACTICE

### Questions and answers

#### 1 Make the questions.

- 1 you/wear/a new jumper?  
*Are you wearing a new jumper?*
- 2 we/learn/Chinese?
- 3 we/sit/in a classroom?
- 4 you/listen/to the teacher?
- 5 the teacher/wear/blue trousers?
- 6 all the students/speak/English?
- 7 you/learn/a lot of English?
- 8 it/rain today?

Stand up. Ask and answer the questions.

*Are you wearing a new jumper?*

*No, I'm not.  
It's really old.*

#### A photo of you

#### 2 Bring a photograph of you to class. Say ...

- where you are.
- what you're doing.
- who you're with.
- what you're wearing.

#### Check it

#### 3 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

- 1 ☐ I'm wear a blue shirt today.  
☐ I'm wearing a blue shirt today.
- 2 ☐ Where are you going?  
☐ Where you going?
- 3 ☐ Peter no working this week.  
☐ Peter isn't working this week.
- 4 ☐ That's Nabil over there. He talks to the teacher.  
☐ That's Nabil over there. He's talking to the teacher.
- 5 ☐ Heidi is German. She comes from Berlin.  
☐ Heidi is German. She's coming from Berlin.
- 6 ☐ Why aren't you having a coffee?  
☐ Why you no having a coffee?

## READING AND LISTENING

### This week is different

#### 1 How do very rich people spend their time and money? What don't they do? Compare ideas with the class.

*They often have very big, expensive cars.*

*They don't travel by public transport.*

#### 2 Read the introduction to the TV programme *The Secret Millionaire*. What do the millionaires do in the programme? Why are they called *secret millionaires*?

# THE SECRET MILLIONAIRE

*The Secret Millionaire* is a programme on UK TV's Channel 4.

Every week a different millionaire leaves his or her comfortable, expensive home and lives and works for ten days with people who aren't rich and need help. The people don't know who he or she is.

They are 'secret millionaires'.



Colin Cameron



3 Read about **Colin Cameron**. Complete the questions.

- 1 When \_\_\_\_\_ he start his business?
- 2 Where \_\_\_\_\_ he live?
- 3 Does he \_\_\_\_\_ any children?
- 4 Why \_\_\_\_\_ he a lucky man?
- 5 Who does he \_\_\_\_\_ to help?

Work with a partner. Ask and answer the questions.

4 Read **This week is different**. Are the sentences true (✓) or false (X)? Correct the false ones.

- 1 Colin went to Manchester by bus.
- 2 He's staying in a flat in the centre of the city.
- 3 He isn't sleeping in a bedroom.
- 4 The hostel is for homeless girls.
- 5 He's helping the boys to read and write.
- 6 They don't think that he is a good teacher.
- 7 Colin isn't enjoying the work at all.
- 8 He wants to give Roger and Margaret a lot of money.

## Listening

5 **T 13.8** Listen to four conversations with Colin. Complete the chart.

	Who's he talking to?	What's he talking about?
1		
2		
3		
4		

## What do you think?

Discuss the questions.

- How is Colin a typical millionaire? How is he not?
- Why would Colin like his sons to meet the boys?
- Do you think the TV programme is a good idea?

**Colin Cameron** is this week's millionaire. He started his business 25 years ago when he was 19. He's now worth £60 million and lives with his wife and two teenage sons in a beautiful, big country house. He also has a house in Paris, and apartments in London and New York. He drives a yellow Lamborghini and even has a private plane. He says:

*"I am a very lucky man. Now I want to help people who are not as lucky as I am, especially young people."*

## This week is different

Colin left his family last weekend and went by train to Manchester. He is now living in Moss Side, a poor area of the city. He is staying with a married couple, Roger and Margaret Watson. They think he is looking for work in Manchester.

Roger and Margaret live in a small flat on the 8th floor of an apartment block. They only have one bedroom so Colin is sleeping on the sofa in the living room. They run a hostel for homeless teenage boys.

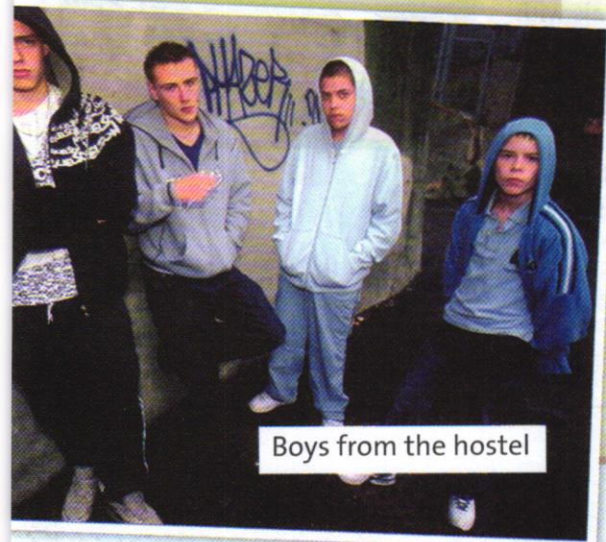
This week Colin is working with the boys in the hostel, an old, grey building in a busy road. Some of the boys can't read and write very well and he is helping them learn so that they can find jobs.

Roger, Margaret and the boys like Colin. They think that he is a good teacher. They have no idea he is a millionaire. Colin says:

*"I'm missing my family a lot but Roger and Margaret are wonderful people. I'm enjoying my time with them very much. I'm learning a lot about life. At the end of the week I want to give them £100,000 to build a new hostel. I'd like to bring my sons here to meet them all."*



Roger and Margaret



Boys from the hostel



# VOCABULARY AND LISTENING

## Opposite verbs

1 Look at the two sentences. Underline the verbs. They are verbs with opposite meaning.

The teacher's asking us questions.

We're answering them.

2 Match the verbs with their opposites.

1 leave arrive

5 love \_\_\_\_\_

9 get up \_\_\_\_\_

2 work \_\_\_\_\_

6 open \_\_\_\_\_

10 remember \_\_\_\_\_

3 buy \_\_\_\_\_

7 turn on \_\_\_\_\_

11 put on \_\_\_\_\_

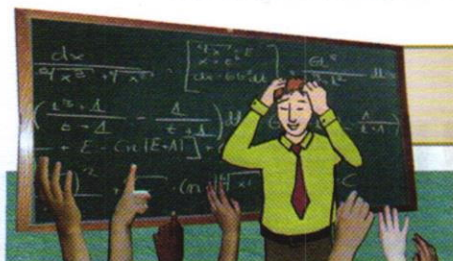
4 walk \_\_\_\_\_

8 start \_\_\_\_\_

12 win \_\_\_\_\_

play sell hate turn off arrive  
finish forget take off  
go to bed lose run close

3 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with the opposite verb in the correct form.



1 Please, don't ask me any more questions. I can't \_\_\_\_\_ them.



2 I'm selling my old car and I'm \_\_\_\_\_ a new one.



3 We always get up at seven in the morning and \_\_\_\_\_ at eleven at night.



5 I usually walk to school, but yesterday I was late so I \_\_\_\_\_ all the way.



4 It was cold, so Tom took off his T-shirt and \_\_\_\_\_ a warm jumper.



7 Don't turn off the TV, I'm watching it! Please \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ again!

6 John's playing tennis with Peter today. He always loses. He never \_\_\_\_\_.



4 T 13.10 Listen. Write down the opposite verbs in each conversation.

1 hate, love 2 \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ 6 \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_

Look at the tapescript on p122. Practise the conversations.



# EVERYDAY ENGLISH

## What's the matter?

1 What's the matter with the people? Complete the sentences with words in the box.

tired hungry thirsty cold hot bored worried angry a cold a headache



1 She's cold.



2 He's \_\_\_\_\_.



3 They're \_\_\_\_\_.



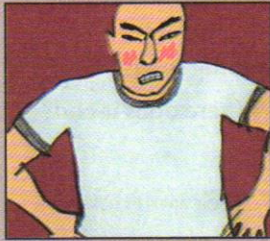
4 He's \_\_\_\_\_.



5 They're \_\_\_\_\_.



6 She's \_\_\_\_\_.



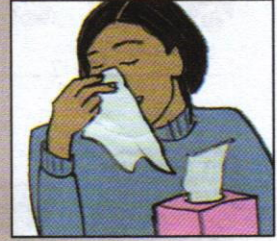
7 He's \_\_\_\_\_.



8 She's \_\_\_\_\_.



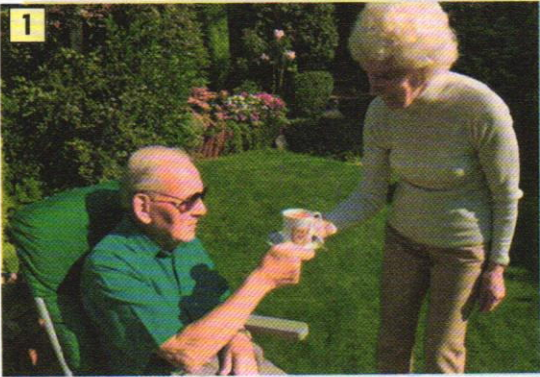
9 He has \_\_\_\_\_.



10 She has \_\_\_\_\_.

**T 13.11** Listen and repeat.

2 Complete the conversations with words from exercise 1.



- 1  
A What's the matter?  
B I'm \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.  
A Why don't you have a cup of tea?  
B That's a good idea.  
A Sit down. I'll make it for you.



- 2  
C What's the matter?  
D I have a bad \_\_\_\_\_.  
C Oh dear! Why don't you take some aspirin?  
D I don't have any.  
C It's OK. I have some.

**T 13.12** Listen and check. Practise the conversations with a partner.

## Roleplay

3 Have similar conversations. Use the words from exercise 1 and these ideas.

- go to bed early
- put on a jumper
- have a sandwich
- have a cold drink
- talk to a friend
- watch a DVD
- sit down and relax
- go to the mall
- have a cold shower





# 14

## It's time to go!

Future plans • Grammar revision  
Vocabulary revision • Social expressions (2)



### STARTER

#### 1 Write the form of transport.



1 \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_



3 \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_



5 \_\_\_\_\_ 6 \_\_\_\_\_



7 \_\_\_\_\_ 8 \_\_\_\_\_

#### 2 How do you travel? Where to?

*I usually come to school by bus,  
but today I came by car.*

*Sometimes I travel by ...*

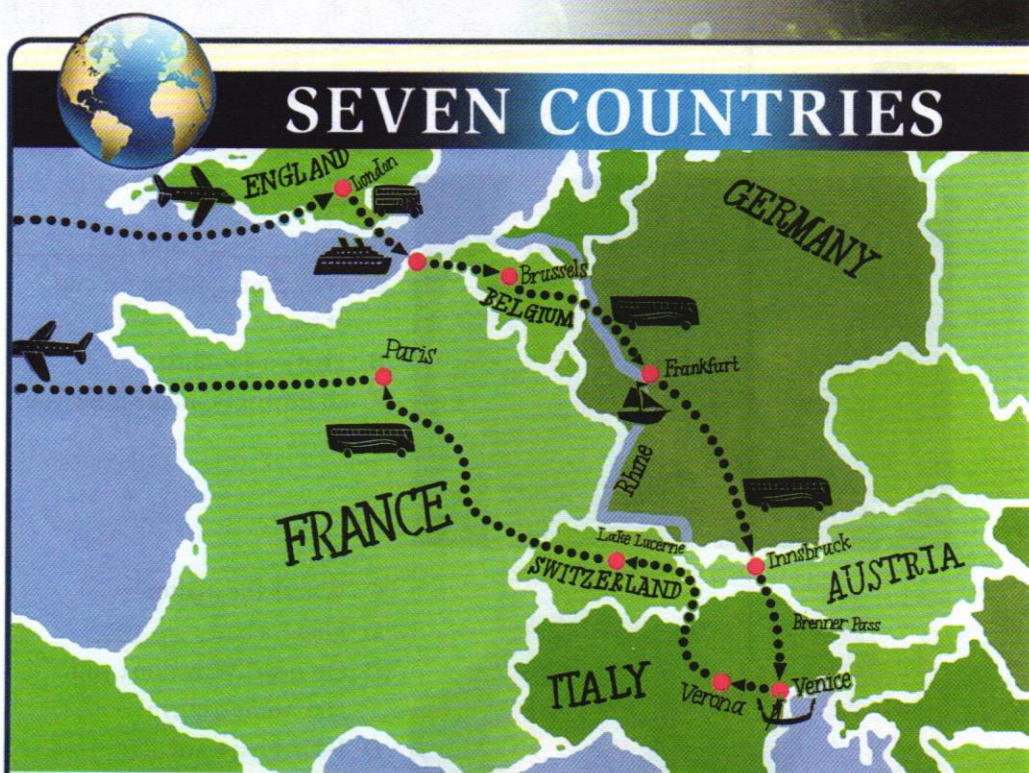
### SEVEN COUNTRIES IN SEVEN DAYS!

#### Future plans

1 **Bill** and **Gloria Bigelow** are from the US. Next week they are going on holiday to Europe. Look at the map and answer the questions.

- Which seven countries are they going to visit?
- Where does the holiday begin? Where does it end?
- How are they travelling?

2 Read the holiday information and check your answers.



#### HOLIDAY INFORMATION

1 **SUNDAY COLUMBUS AIRPORT, OHIO, US – LONDON ENGLAND**

Fly overnight to London.

2 **MONDAY LONDON, ENGLAND**

Check into hotel. Bus tour of London, visit Buckingham Palace, the Houses of Parliament, the Tower of London. See the city from the London Eye.





## IN SEVEN DAYS

### 3 TUESDAY LONDON – BELGIUM – FRANKFURT, GERMANY

Early morning start. Ferry across the English Channel and coach through Belgium and into Germany. Evening boat cruise on the River Rhine. Overnight in Frankfurt.

### 4 WEDNESDAY FRANKFURT – INNSBRUCK, AUSTRIA

By coach down through Germany to the Alps and Austria. Overnight in Innsbruck.

### 5 THURSDAY INNSBRUCK – BRENNER PASS – VENICE, ITALY

South to Italy. Drive over the fantastic 'Europa Bridge' and drive through the Brenner Pass to Venice. Boat ride along the Canals to Piazza San Marco. Overnight in Venice.

### 6 FRIDAY VENICE – LAKE LUCERNE, SWITZERLAND

Stop in Verona to see Romeo and Juliet's balcony. Drive through the St. Gotthard Tunnel to Switzerland and beautiful Lake Lucerne. Overnight at Lake Lucerne.

### 7 SATURDAY LAKE LUCERNE – PARIS, FRANCE

The autoroute into France and through countryside to Paris. Have dinner in the evening in a Left Bank bistro. Overnight in Paris.

### 8 SUNDAY PARIS – COLUMBUS AIRPORT, OHIO, US

Morning sightseeing in Paris, the Eiffel Tower, the Arc de Triomphe and the Louvre to see the Mona Lisa. Overnight flight back to Columbus, US.

## GRAMMAR SPOT

Here are two ways of talking about future plans.

### 1 Present Continuous

They're **flying** to Europe tomorrow/next week.  
We're **leaving** on Sunday/at six o'clock.

### 2 going to

They're **going to have** a bus tour of London.  
We're **going to stop** in Verona.

► Grammar Reference 14.1 p129

3 Read the holiday information again carefully. Complete the sentences.

- On Sunday they're flying to \_\_\_\_\_.
- On Monday they're going to have a \_\_\_\_\_ tour of London.
- On Tuesday they're travelling through \_\_\_\_\_ and into \_\_\_\_\_.
- On Wednesday they're going to drive down to the Alps and \_\_\_\_\_.
- On Thursday they're going to \_\_\_\_\_ over the Europa Bridge.
- On Friday they're going to \_\_\_\_\_ in Verona. They're \_\_\_\_\_ to see Juliet's balcony.
- On Saturday evening they're \_\_\_\_\_ dinner in a bistro in Paris.
- On Sunday morning they're \_\_\_\_\_ to the Louvre to see the Mona Lisa. In the evening they're \_\_\_\_\_ back to the US.

**T 14.1** Listen and check. Practise the sentences.

## Questions

4 **T 14.2** Listen and repeat the questions.

What are they **doing** on Sunday?

What are they **going to do** on Monday?



Complete the questions about Bill and Gloria.

- What/doing/Tuesday?
- What/going to do/Wednesday?
- When/going to drive/the Europa Bridge?
- What/going to do/Verona?
- Where/having dinner/Saturday?
- When/going to the Louvre?
- When/flying back/the US?

**T 14.3** Listen and check. Ask and answer the questions with your partner.



## PRACTICE

### Eddie's plans

- 1 Eddie is talking to a friend about his holiday plans. Complete the conversation with the question words.

when	where (x2)	<del>what</del>	who
how	how much	how long	

Friend What are you doing?

Eddie I'm planning my holiday.

F Oh, \_\_\_\_\_ are you going?

E I'm going to South Africa. It's my first time.

F Oh you're so lucky! \_\_\_\_\_ are you leaving?

E I'm leaving next Monday morning.

F \_\_\_\_\_ are you going with?

E I'm not going with anyone. Just me and my rucksack.

F \_\_\_\_\_ are you going to stay?

E Well, I'm staying with friends in Cape Town. Then I'm going on safari. I'm going to sleep in a tent.

F Fantastic! And \_\_\_\_\_ are you going to travel?

E By plane to Cape Town, of course, and then by jeep when I'm on safari.

F By jeep! How exciting. And \_\_\_\_\_ are you going to stay?

E Just two weeks. I'd like to stay longer but I can't. It's too expensive.

F \_\_\_\_\_ is it going to cost?

E About £2,000.

F Mmmm, that's quite a lot. Well, have a great time. I can't wait to see your photos.

E Oh, yes, I'm going to take a lot of photos.

**T 14.4** Listen and check. Practise the conversation with a partner.

- 2 Ask and answer questions about Eddie's holiday plans with your partner.

- Where/going?
- Why/going?
- Who/going with?
- When/leaving?
- How/going to travel?
- Where/going to stay?
- How long/going to stay?

Where's he going?

He's going to South Africa.

Why is he going there?

Because ...

### Talking about you

- 3 With your partner, ask and answer questions about you. Ask about ...

- after the lesson
- this evening
- tomorrow
- next weekend
- on your next holiday (where)

What are you doing/going to do after the lesson?

### Check it

- 4 Each sentence has one word missing. Write it in.

- 1 What <sup>are</sup> you doing this evening?
- 2 I'm going see some friends tonight.
- 3 When they going to France?
- 4 She seeing the doctor tomorrow.
- 5 What time are you to leave?
- 6 I'm going to the mall Saturday afternoon.



# VOCABULARY REVISION

## Words that go together

1 Match a verb in A with words in B.

A	B
travel	hard
ride	a photograph
drive	by train
go	dinner with friends
work	a bike
have	sightseeing
take	carefully
do	a suit
pay	your homework
wear	bills on the Internet

Work with a partner. Talk about *your* plans

I'm going to travel by train next Saturday.

2 Draw a line between words that have a connection.

station journalist airport  
shampoo hospital  
newspaper train swimming  
waiter kitchen menu  
fridge nurse  
beach chemist's planes

Explain the connection. *Trains travel between stations.*

3 Three words belong to a group and one is different. Underline the one that is different. Why is it different?

- |            |            |               |             |
|------------|------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1 train    | bus        | <u>bridge</u> | motorbike   |
| 2 wife     | waiter     | aunt          | grandfather |
| 3 lovely   | fantastic  | amazing       | awful       |
| 4 trainers | trousers   | socks         | boots       |
| 5 desk     | armchair   | sofa          | laptop      |
| 6 doctor   | journalist | cooker        | painter     |

## Pronunciation

4 Write the words in the correct box.

### Two syllables

pilot	hotel	women	married
enjoy	shampoo	chocolate	arrive

●●	●●
pilot	hotel

T 14.5 Listen and check.

### Three syllables

photograph	designer	assistant	vegetable	magazine
interesting	understand	banana	souvenir	

●●●	●●●	●●●
photograph		

T 14.6 Listen and check.

5 T 14.7 Listen and underline the two words that rhyme.

- |               |       |             |
|---------------|-------|-------------|
| 1 <u>some</u> | home  | <u>come</u> |
| 2 goes        | knows | does        |
| 3 were        | here  | her         |
| 4 make        | steak | speak       |
| 5 near        | wear  | there       |
| 6 eat         | great | wait        |

T 14.7 Listen again and check.





## READING AND SPEAKING

### Life's big events

1 Put these life events into an order.

- \_\_\_ ... went to school
- 1 ... was born ...
- \_\_\_ ... got married
- \_\_\_ ... grew up ...
- \_\_\_ ... studied at university
- \_\_\_ ... met a husband/wife

2 Look at the pictures of the people.

**T 14.8** Listen to Milena Dušek, Georg Reinhardt, and Archie McCrae talk about their lives. Who talks about ...?

- his/her parents
- his/her husband/wife
- his/her studies
- where he/she lives

What do they say?

3 Work in three groups.

**Group A** Read about Milena Dušek.

**Group B** Read about Georg Reinhardt.

**Group C** Read about Archie McCrae.

Read your text quickly. Find one piece of information about his/her past, present, and future. Compare your ideas in your group.

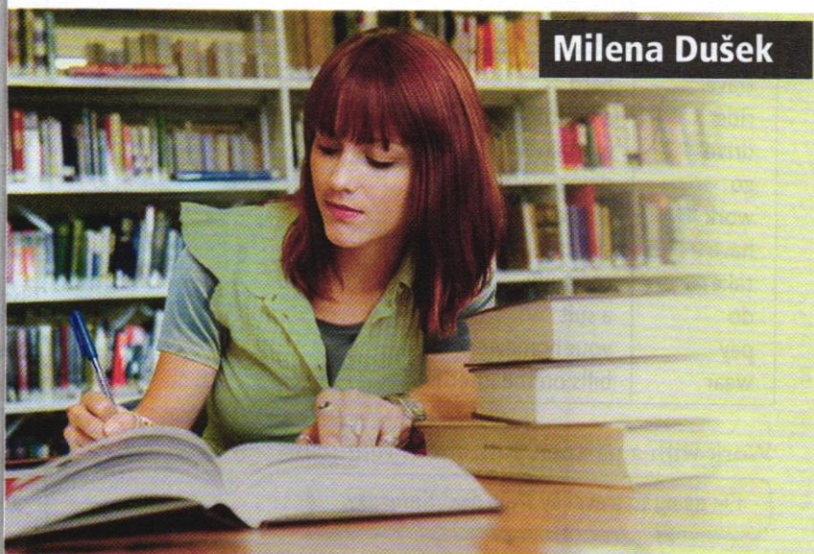
4 Read your text again and answer the questions.

- 1 Where ... born?
- 2 Where ... live? Who ... with?
- 3 Where ... grow up?
- 4 What ... parents do? What ... wife do?
- 5 Where ... go to school?
- 6 What ... studying at school/university?
- 7 When ... going abroad?
- 8 What ... going to do there?
- 9 How does ... feel about going?

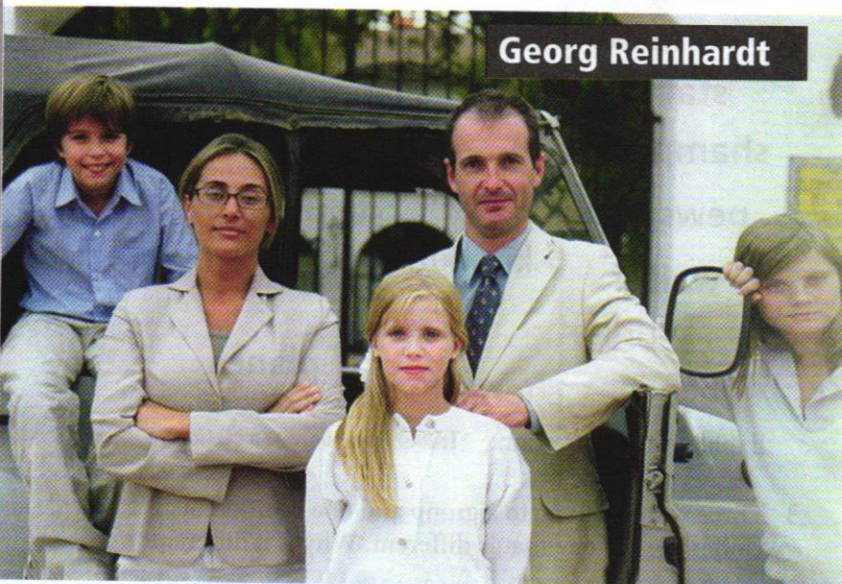
Find a student from the other two groups. Compare and swap information.

# Past, Present,

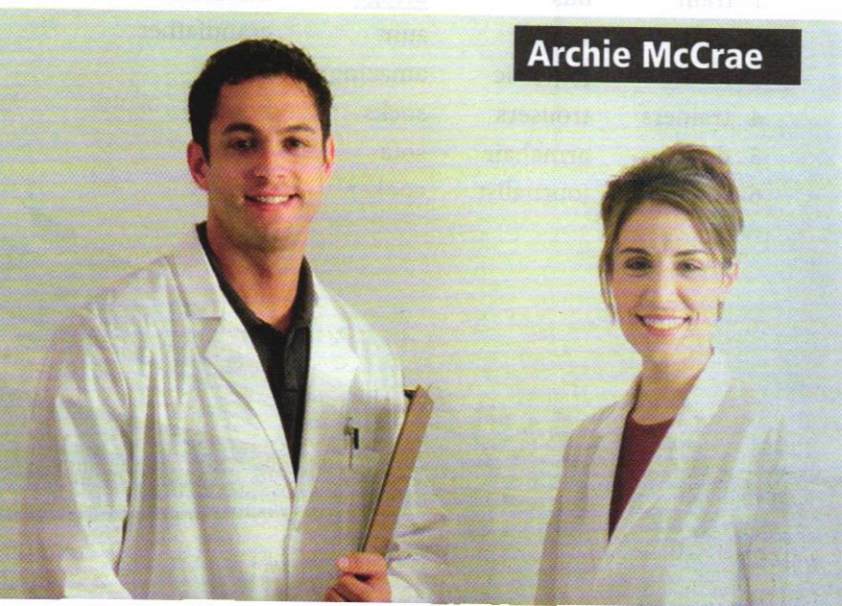
## Three people talk about their family,



**Milena Dušek**



**Georg Reinhardt**



**Archie McCrae**



# and Future

## education, work, and ambitions.

**Milena Dušek** is Czech. She was born in Prague, where she still lives with her mother, father and two sisters. She's 18, and she goes to an international school. She is studying English, psychology, and economics.

'My father is a journalist, and works for a newspaper called Blesk. My mother works as a chef in a restaurant in the Old Town.

Milena wants to work in banking. She's going to study business when she's older, so it's important that she speaks very good English. Next summer she's going to London for two months to study at a language school. She's going to stay with an English family, and she's going to learn English for five hours a day.

She's excited about going to London, but a little bit worried, too. 'I hope the family are nice, and I hope I like English food!' she says.

**Georg Reinhardt** is an architect. He's married, and he lives with his wife, Karlotta, and three children, in Berlin. Karlotta is a housewife, and their three children go to a local school.

'I was born in Frankfurt, where I grew up and went to school. I studied architecture at the University of Munich. I met Karlotta at university. She was a student of modern languages. We moved to Berlin in 1995.'

Georg also teaches architecture. Next year he is moving to America, to teach at the University of California in Berkeley for three years. His family is going with him. They're going to live on the university campus, where there is a school for the children. His wife is going to teach German.

They're all very excited about the trip. 'The kids are learning English. They want to see the Golden Gate Bridge in San Francisco,' says Georg. 'My wife and I are looking forward to living in sunshine all year round.'

**Archie McCrae** is Scottish. He was born in Glasgow, where he grew up with his parents and his brother and sister. His father is a doctor and his mother works for the research company, Bayer.

'I went to Drumchapel High School. I studied biology, chemistry, and physics. At school I met Fiona, and we got married when we were 22. We studied medicine together at the same university, and now we live in Edinburgh.'

They want to work in developing countries. Next week they're going to Zambia, in southern Africa, for a year, to work in a hospital in the east of the country. They're going to train doctors and nurses in villages near the hospital.

How do they feel about their trip? 'We're very excited, but a bit nervous,' says Archie. 'Zambia is a beautiful country, but very poor. The people are wonderful. I hope we can help them.'

### Talking about you

- 5 When we meet someone for the first time, we sometimes say a little bit about ourselves.

I was born in ...  
I go to school in ...

Find the expressions in the box in the texts about Milena, Georg, and Archie. Underline them.

was born	grew up	live with
going to	hope	work as/for
studying/studied		excited about

- 6 Use the expressions in exercise 5 to write sentences about you.
- 7 Work with a partner. Imagine you are meeting for the first time.

Tell him/her about yourself.

Ask questions to learn more about him/her.

Who do you ...?

When did you ...?

What are you going to ...?



# GRAMMAR REVISION

## Tenses

1 Complete the sentences about Archie McCrae from p109 with the verbs in the correct tense.

- 1 Archie and Fiona live (live) in Edinburgh.
- 2 Archie \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a brother and a sister.
- 3 His mother \_\_\_\_\_ (work) for a research company, *Bayer*.
- 4 Archie \_\_\_\_\_ (grow up) in Glasgow.
- 5 He \_\_\_\_\_ (study) medicine at university.
- 6 He and Fiona \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to work in Zambia soon.

## Questions

2 Complete the questions about Archie.

- 1 Where do Archie and Fiona live?  
*They live in Edinburgh.*
- 2 How many \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Two, one brother and one sister.*
- 3 Who \_\_\_\_\_ for?  
*A research company called 'Bayer'.*
- 4 Where did \_\_\_\_\_?  
*In Glasgow.*
- 5 What \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Medicine.*
- 6 Where are \_\_\_\_\_?  
*Zambia.*

## Check it

3 Underline and correct the mistakes.

- 1 He comes from Qatar.
- 2 I no want to go out.
- 3 She has 18 years old.
- 4 Where you live?
- 5 I went in Algeria last year.
- 6 He have a cat.
- 7 I no can understand you.
- 8 What did you last night?
- 9 I going see a film tonight.
- 10 What you do this weekend?

## Sentence completion

4 Write the correct answer.

- 1 I have some homework to do this evening.  
a any                      ~~b~~ some
- 2 In our town \_\_\_\_\_ a big park.  
a there's                      b it's
- 3 Who is \_\_\_\_\_ man talking to John?  
a this                      b that
- 4 I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ money. Sorry.  
a any                      b some
- 5 Dave, \_\_\_\_\_ is my brother, Pete.  
Pete, \_\_\_\_\_ is Dave.  
a this                      b that
- 6 My brother Pete is \_\_\_\_\_ engineer.  
a a                      b an
- 7 My \_\_\_\_\_ name is Alice.  
a mothers                      b mother's
- 8 You speak \_\_\_\_\_.  
a English very well                      b very well English
- 9 I have a \_\_\_\_\_.  
a car German                      b German car
- 10 I'm hungry. \_\_\_\_\_ a sandwich.  
a I'd like                      b I like

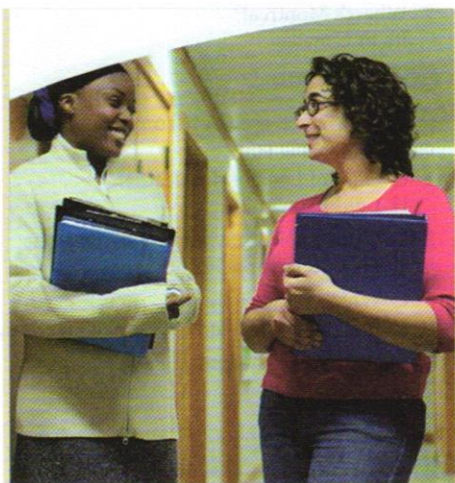




## EVERYDAY ENGLISH

### Social expressions (2)

1 **T 14.9** Listen and look at the pictures. Complete the conversations with the words in the boxes.



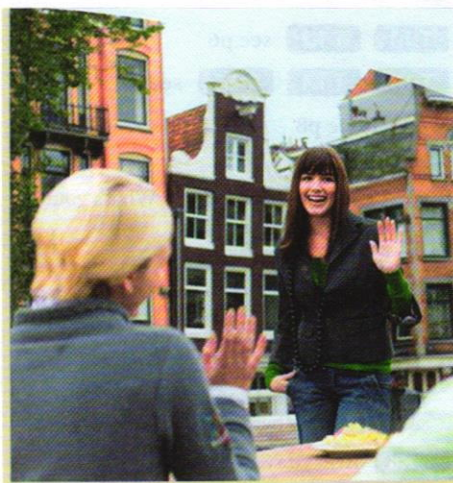
best later luck

- 1 A Good \_\_\_\_\_ in the exam!  
I hope it goes well.  
B Thanks. I'll do my \_\_\_\_\_.  
A See you \_\_\_\_\_. Bye!



matter so worry

- 2 C Oh, no!  
D Don't \_\_\_\_\_. It  
doesn't \_\_\_\_\_.  
C I'm \_\_\_\_\_ sorry!



weekend Same special

- 3 E Have a good \_\_\_\_\_.  
F Thanks! \_\_\_\_\_ to you!  
What are you doing?  
Anything \_\_\_\_\_?  
E We're going to a wedding.



soon phone

- 4 G Goodbye! Drive carefully!  
H Thanks! I'll \_\_\_\_\_ you when  
I arrive.  
G See you again \_\_\_\_\_!



kind present to say

- 5 I I have a \_\_\_\_\_ for you.  
J For me? Why?  
I It's just \_\_\_\_\_ thank you.  
J That's so \_\_\_\_\_ of you!



pleasure everything Bye

- 6 K \_\_\_\_\_! And thanks  
for \_\_\_\_\_.  
L It was a \_\_\_\_\_. We enjoyed  
having you.

**T 14.9** Listen again and check.

2 Work in pairs. Learn the conversations. Stand up! Act the conversations to the class.



# Tapescripts



## UNIT 1

**T 1.1** **T 1.2** see p6

**T 1.3** **T 1.4** **T 1.5** see p7

**T 1.6** see p8

**T 1.7**

- 1 A Hello. My name's Anna. What's your name?  
B My name's Marie.
- 2 A Max, this is Carla.  
B Hi, Carla.  
C Hello, Max. Nice to meet you.
- 3 A Hi, Eda. How are you?  
B Fine, thanks, David. And you?  
A Very well, thanks.

**T 1.8** **Everyday English**

- 1 A Good morning!  
B Good morning! What a lovely day!
- 2 A Good afternoon!  
B Hello. A cup of tea, please.
- 3 A Goodbye!  
B Bye! See you later!
- 4 A Good night!  
B Good night! Sleep well!

**T 1.9**

- 1 A Good morning! How are you today?  
B Fine, thanks.
- 2 A Good afternoon!  
B Good afternoon! A cup of coffee, please.
- 3 A Goodbye! Have a nice day!  
B Thank you. And you. See you later.
- 4 A Good night! Sleep well.  
B Thank you. And you.

**T 1.10** **Vocabulary**

- |                |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1 a book       | 7 a burger      |
| 2 a computer   | 8 a sandwich    |
| 3 a television | 9 a camera      |
| 4 a phone      | 10 a photograph |
| 5 a bus        | 11 a bag        |
| 6 a car        | 12 a house      |

**T 1.11** see p10

**T 1.12** see p11

**T 1.13** **Plurals**

- a five books
- b three cars
- c eight houses
- d seven cameras
- e nine photographs
- f two sandwiches
- g four computers
- h six buses
- i ten students

**T 1.14** see p11



## UNIT 2

**T 2.1** **T 2.2** **T 2.3** see p12

**T 2.4** **Where's he from?**

- 1 His name's Kevin. He's from the United States.
- 2 His name's László. He's from Hungary.
- 3 Her name's Karima. She's from Egypt.
- 4 Her name's Tatiana. She's from Russia.
- 5 Her name's Rosely. She's from Brazil.
- 6 His name's Simon. He's from England.
- 7 His name's Yong. He's from China.
- 8 Her name's Hayley. She's from Australia.

**T 2.5** see p13

**T 2.6** **Cities and countries**

- |                      |                            |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| Where's Barcelona?   | It's in Spain.             |
| Where's Beijing?     | It's in China.             |
| Where's Moscow?      | It's in Russia.            |
| Where's Cairo?       | It's in Egypt.             |
| Where's Los Angeles? | It's in the United States. |
| Where's São Paulo?   | It's in Brazil.            |
| Where's Sydney?      | It's in Australia.         |
| Where's Damascus?    | It's in Syria.             |
| Where's Budapest?    | It's in Hungary.           |
| Where's London?      | It's in England.           |

**T 2.7** **Questions and answers**

- R = Rosely, B = Bruno**
- R Hello, I'm Rosely. What's your name?
  - B My name's Bruno.
  - R Hello, Bruno. Where are you from?
  - B I'm from Brazil. Where are you from?
  - R Oh, I'm from Brazil, too. I'm from São Paulo.
  - B Really? I'm from São Paulo, too!
  - R Oh, nice to meet you, Bruno.

**T 2.8**

- 1 C Hello. I'm Claudia. I'm from Italy.  
A Hello, Claudia. I'm Akemi from Japan.
- 2 C Hello. My name's Charles. What's your name?  
B Hi, Charles. I'm Bud. I'm from the United States. Where are you from?  
C I'm from London, in England.  
B Oh, right! I'm from Chicago.
- 3 L Hi! I'm Loretta. I'm from Sydney, Australia.  
J Hi, Loretta. I'm Jane. I'm from Australia, too.  
L Oh, wow! Are you from Sydney?  
J No, I'm from Melbourne.

**T 2.9** **Questions and answers**

- 1 Where are you from?  
I'm from Japan.
- 2 What's her name?  
Her name's Tatiana.
- 3 What's his name?  
His name's Fadi.
- 4 Where's he from?  
He's from Amman.
- 5 What's this in English?  
It's a computer.

- 6 How are you?  
Fine, thanks.
- 7 Where's Montreal?  
It's in Canada.

**T 2.10** see p16

**T 2.11** **Where are they from?**

**C = Claude, H = Holly**

- 1 C Oh, no! Look at the weather!  
H Ugh! It's awful!
- 2 H Wow! Look at my burger! It's fantastic!  
C My burger is really good, too!
- 3 C What's this building?  
H It's the Empire State Building! It's fantastic!
- 4 C Wow! Look at Central Park!  
H It's beautiful!

**T 2.12** see p17

**T 2.13** **Numbers 21 – 30**

twenty-one twenty-two twenty-three  
twenty-four twenty-five twenty-six  
twenty-seven twenty-eight twenty-nine  
thirty

**T 2.14**

1 12 2 16 3 9 4 17 5 23

**T 2.15**

- 1 This is little Becky. She's two.
- 2 Her name's Naomi. She's seven.
- 3 He's Nathan. He's fifteen tomorrow.
- 4 How old is she? She's 26.
- 5 This is Jeremy. He's 29, nearly 30.



## UNIT 3

**T 3.1** **Jobs**

- |                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1 a teacher        | 6 a shop assistant |
| 2 a doctor         | 7 a nurse          |
| 3 a bus driver     | 8 a student        |
| 4 a police officer | 9 a businessman    |
| 5 a builder        |                    |

**T 3.2** **T 3.3** see p18

**T 3.4** **Kiran Patel**

- 1 What's his surname?  
Patel.
- 2 What's his first name?  
Kiran.
- 3 Where's he from?  
England.
- 4 What's his address?  
29, Victoria Road, Birmingham
- 5 What's his phone number?  
07700 955031
- 6 How old is he?  
He's twenty.
- 7 What's his job?  
He's a student.
- 8 Is he married?  
No, he isn't.



**T 3.5** see p19

**T 3.6**

**I = Interviewer; D&P = Donny & Paul, (brothers from Ireland)**

- I** Hi! Are you the boys from the National University?
- P+all** Yes, we are.
- I** Great! And are you Donny McNab?
- P** No, I'm not. I'm Paul McNab. This is Donny. He's my brother.
- I** Ah, yes, sorry. Hi, Donny. You're a student from Scotland, right?
- D** Well, yes, I am a student but I'm not from Scotland.
- I** Oh, where are you from?
- P&D** We're from here - Ireland.
- I** Are the other boys from Ireland too?
- D** No, they aren't. They're all from different countries.
- I** Oh! Interesting! And are they all students?
- D** Yes, they are. We're all ...
- P** Yeah, we're all students at the National University of Ireland, in Galway.
- I** Interesting! Now, this walk is difficult. Twelve mountains or 'Bens' in three days! Are you worried?
- D** Yes, it's very difficult, but we aren't worried!
- I** OK boys! Nice to meet you. Good luck to you all!
- All** Thank you very much.

**T 3.7 Questions and answers**

- Are Paul and Donny brothers?  
Yes, they are.
- Are they from Scotland?  
No, they aren't.
- Are the other boys from Ireland?  
No, they aren't.
- Is it a difficult walk?  
Yes, it is.
- Are the boys worried?  
No, they aren't worried.

**T 3.8**

**Tarek Elkushli**

**I = Interviewer, T = Tarek**

- I** Good morning.
- T** Hello.
- I** What's your name, please?
- T** My name's Tarek Elkushli.
- I** Thank you. And where are you from, Tarek?
- T** I'm from Tripoli, in Libya.
- I** Thank you. And your telephone number, please?
- T** 092 1844362
- I** How old are you, Tarek?
- T** I'm forty-two.
- I** And ... what's your job?
- T** I'm a businessman.
- I** And ... are you married?
- T** No, I'm not.
- I** Thank you very much.

**Grace Chou**

**I = Interviewer, G = Grace**

- I** Good afternoon.
- G** Good afternoon.
- I** What's your name, please?

- G** Grace, Grace Chou.
- I** And where are you from?
- G** From New York.
- I** Ah! So you're from the United States.
- G** Yes, I am.
- I** What's your phone number?
- G** 212 638-9475
- I** Thank you. How old are you?
- G** I'm thirty-three.
- I** What's your job, Miss Chou?
- G** I'm a shop assistant.
- I** And are you married?
- G** Yes, I am.
- I** That's fine. Thank you very much.

**T 3.9**

- The boys are on holiday.  
They aren't on holiday! They're on a charity walk!
- They're in Scotland.  
They aren't in Scotland! They're in Ireland!
- Bo is from Australia.  
He isn't from Australia! He's from Sweden!
- Keith's from Sweden.  
He isn't from Sweden! He's from England!
- They're on the phone to a friend.  
They aren't on the phone to a friend! They're on the phone to a journalist!
- They're very tired.  
They aren't tired! They're very happy and excited!

**T 3.10 Interview on a mountain**

**J = Journalist, R = Ronan (Australian), B = Bo (Swedish), K = Keith (English), D&P = Donny & Paul, (brothers from Ireland)**

- J** Hi, guys, where are you?
- All** Hi, we're on Benbaun. It's beautiful!
- J** And how are you?
- D&P** We're all fine! It's fantastic here!
- J** Are you tired?
- D&P** No, we aren't. We're very happy and excited!
- J** Now, is this your first walk for charity?
- All** Yeah. That's right.
- J** And what is the money for?
- R** It's for children ...
- K** Yes, it's for a children's charity.
- J** Great! And you're all at the same university, is that right?
- P** Yeah, the National University in Galway.
- J** Now, one by one. Ronan you're from Australia.
- R** Uh huh.
- J** And how old are you, Ronan?
- R** I'm 22.
- J** So Bo and Keith, how old are you?
- K** We're both 19.
- B** Yeah. That's right.
- J** OK. Now, Donny and Paul. You're brothers.
- D&P** Yeah, we are.
- J** And you're from Scotland?
- D&P** No, no. We aren't from Scotland. We're from Ireland.
- J** Ireland. Oh, yes. Sorry. How old are you both?
- P** I'm 20.
- D** And I'm 18.
- Others** Come on Paul and Donny. It's time to go!

- J** Thanks very much guys! Good luck with the rest of the walk!
- All** THANK YOU!

**T 3.11 Social expressions**

- A** I'm sorry.  
**B** That's OK.
- C** A coffee, please.  
**D** That's £1.20  
**C** Thanks very much.
- E** Excuse me! Where's the station?  
**F** It's over there.  
**E** Thanks a lot.
- G** Thank you very much. That's very kind.  
**H** That's OK.
- I** Quelle heure est-il?  
**J** I'm sorry. I don't understand.
- K** Excuse me! Where's the town centre?  
**L** I'm sorry. I don't know.



## UNIT 4

**T 4.1** see p24

**T 4.2**

- Is Annie married?  
Yes, she is.
- Where's their house?  
It's in London.
- What's Annie's job?  
She's a doctor.
- Where's her hospital?  
In the centre of London.
- What's Jim's job?  
He's a bank manager.
- Are their children both at school?  
No. Emma's at school. Vince is at university.

**T 4.3** see p25

**T 4.4**

- Annie is Jim's wife.
- Jim is Annie's husband.
- Emma is Annie and Jim's daughter.
- Vince is their son.
- Annie is Vince's mother.
- Jim is Emma's father.
- Emma is Vince's sister.
- Vince is Emma's brother.
- Annie and Jim are Emma and Vince's parents.
- Emma and Vince are Jim and Annie's children.

**T 4.5 The Taylor family**

- Come on, Emma! Time for school!
- Mum! Where are my school books?
- Bye, everybody! I'm off to work! Have a good day!
- Bye, Dad! See you this evening.
- Good morning, Mrs Clark. How are you today?



**T 4.6 Michela Sacchi from Chicago**

Hil My name's Michela Sacchi, and I'm from the United States. This is my family. Our house is in Chicago. This is my brother. His name is Massimo, and he's 19. He's a student in college. This is my mother. Her name's Maria. She's 47, and she's an Italian teacher. And this is my father Giovanni. He's 52, and he's a businessman.

**T 4.7**

- 1 What's your name?  
My name's Annie.
- 2 What are your names?  
Our names are Emma and Vince.
- 3 Jean-Paul and André are students.  
Their school is in Paris.
- 4 My sister's married.  
What's her husband's name?
- 5 My brother's office is in New York.  
What's his job?
- 6 We're in our English class.
- 7 Mum and Dad are in Rome.  
What's the name of their hotel?

**T 4.8 see p27****T 4.9 Paddy's life**

- 1 I have a small hotel in the city of Galway.
- 2 My wife has a job in town.
- 3 We have three sons.
- 4 We have an apartment in the hotel.
- 5 My sister has a big house in London.

**T 4.10 Questions and answers**

- 1 How's your daughter?  
She's very well, thank you.
- 2 What's your sister's job?  
She's a nurse.
- 3 How old are your children?  
They're ten and thirteen.
- 4 Who is Pedro?  
He's a student from Madrid.
- 5 Where's your office?  
It's in the centre of town.
- 6 What's your surname?  
Smith.

**T 4.11 Who is it?**

- 1 Look at these shoes, Alison! They're fantastic!
- 2 My flat mate is from the north of England.
- 3 London's great! And my flat mate Valerie's great, too!
- 4 Our sister's at university.  
Yeah, she's at university in London.
- 5 I like my sister's flat mate, she's funny.
- 6 Our children's school is near our house.
- 7 My bank is in the centre of Manchester.
- 8 Come on, United! Come on!  
Yes! A goal! 4 - 1 to Man United!

**T 4.12 T 4.13 see p30****T 4.14 How do you spell...?**

- 1 What's your name?  
Annie Taylor.  
How do you spell your first name?  
A-N-N-I-E  
How do you spell your surname?  
T-A-Y-L-O-R

- 2 What's your name?  
Quentin Wrexham.  
How do you spell your first name?  
Q-U-E-N-T-I-N.  
How do you spell your surname?  
W-R-E-X-H-A-M.
- 3 What's your name?  
Takako Matsuda.  
How do you spell your first name?  
T-A-K-A-K-O.  
How do you spell your surname?  
M-A-T-S-U-D-A.

**T 4.15 see p30****T 4.16 see p31****T 4.17 Email addresses**

- 1 A Your email address is?  
P pambowler@btinternet.com  
A B-A ...  
P No, Pam. P-A-M.  
A Ah, OK. Pam.  
P Bowler. B-O-W-L-E-R.  
A Pam ... Bowler ... @  
P @btinternet.com  
A @btinternet.com  
P That's it.
- 2 B Can you tell me your email address?  
H Yes. harrylime@hotmail.co.uk  
B harrylime ... All one word ...  
H @hotmail ...  
B @hotmail ...  
H .co.uk  
B .co.uk. Great. Thanks.
- 3 C What's your email address?  
P paulmartin@wanadoo.fr  
C paul ...  
P martin. M-A-R-T-I-N.  
C paulmartin ...  
P @wanadoo ...  
C wanadoo ...  
P .fr  
C .fr. Got it.

**UNIT 5****T 5.1****Sports**

tennis football swimming skiing

**Food**

Indian food Chinese food pizza  
burger oranges ice-cream

**Drinks**

tea coffee cola orange juice milk

**T 5.2 see p32****T 5.3 see p32****T 5.4 Harvey**

What do I like? Well, I like sports a lot, but not all sports. I like football - American football, of course - and I like skiing! But I don't like tennis and - erm I don't like swimming very much. And food and drink? What do I like? Well, I like burgers, and pizza. I like Indian food a lot. But not Chinese food, I don't like Chinese food, and I don't like tea. Tea is for the English. I'm American so I like coffee sometimes, and cola, of course. I love cola.

**T 5.5 see p33****T 5.6 Harvey and Eva**

I = Interviewer, H = Harvey, E = Eva

- I Harvey and Eva. You're twins. Do you like the same things?  
H Well, we really, really like pizza!  
E Oh, yes! It's delicious! We have pizza a lot at home and in restaurants.  
I So, do you like the same food?  
E Well, we both like ice-cream.  
H Mmm, it's fantastic!  
E But we really don't like tea! Do we, Harvey?  
H No, we don't. Ugh! It's awful!  
I And do you both like sports?  
H Yes, we do. We like skiing.  
E Yeah! We like skiing a lot. It's really exciting!  
H And I love football! It's great.  
E No, it isn't. It's awful!

**T 5.7 see p34****T 5.8**

I = Interviewer, C = Colin

- 1 I Hello, Colin, nice to meet you. Where do you come from?  
C I come from Scotland, from Dundee.
- 2 I Do you live in Dundee?  
C No, I don't. I live and work in London.
- 3 I Do you live with friends?  
C Yes, I do. I live with two friends.
- 4 I Where do you work?  
C I work in an Italian restaurant.
- 5 I Do you like Italian food?  
C Yes, I do. I like it a lot.
- 6 I Do you drink Italian coffee?  
C Yes, I do. I drink coffee but I don't drink tea. I don't like it.
- 7 I Do you like your job?  
C No, I don't. I want to be an engineer.
- 8 I Do you speak Italian?  
C No, I don't. I speak Spanish and French, but I don't speak Italian.

**T 5.9****Conversations with Colin**

- 1 Colin Goodbye guys. Time for work.  
A Bye. Colin. See you later.  
Colin Yeah. Very late tonight.  
A Oh yes. It's Friday.  
Colin Yes, I work late on Fridays. Bye.
- 2 Colin Good evening. Do you want to order?  
B Ah yes. We both want pizzas.  
C Yes, two Pizza Margheritas please.  
Colin Fine. And do you want a drink?  
B Oh yes, we do. Do you have a list?  
Colin Yes, of course. Here it is.



- 3 Mum Hello?  
 Colin Hi, Mum!  
 Mum Oh hello Colin. Donald, It's your big brother! ... Colin, how are you?  
 Colin I'm fine Mum, really fine.  
 Mum Do you like your flat?  
 Colin Yes, I do but it's a bit small for three people.  
 Mum Ah, yes. It is small. But do you like your work?  
 Colin No, I don't. Not really. But I like the food.  
 Mum Oh, yes. Italian food is good.  
 Colin Yeah but I like your food the best, Mum! It's delicious!  
 Mum Ooh, thank you Colin. Now, do you want to speak to your brother?  
 Colin Yes, of course. Hi Donald. It's your brother ...

### T 5.10 Languages and nationalities

England	English
Germany	German
Italy	Italian
Mexico	Mexican
Syria	Syrian
Japan	Japanese
Portugal	Portuguese
China	Chinese
France	French
the United States	American
Saudi Arabia	Saudi Arabian

### T 5.11 What language do they speak?

- 1 In Portugal they speak Portuguese.
- 2 In Canada they speak English and French.
- 3 In France they speak French.
- 4 In Germany they speak German.
- 5 In Italy they speak Italian.
- 6 In Japan they speak Japanese.
- 7 In Mexico they speak Spanish.
- 8 In Libya they speak Arabic.
- 9 In Turkey they speak Turkish.
- 10 In Russia they speak Russian.

### T 5.12 What's this? Where's it from?

- 1 It's a German car.
- 2 It's Moroccan tea.
- 3 They're Spanish oranges.
- 4 It's a Japanese camera.
- 5 It's Mexican food.
- 6 It's an English dictionary.
- 7 It's an Italian bag.
- 8 It's Brazilian coffee.
- 9 It's French water.

### T 5.13 At a dinner party

F = Flavia, T = Teresa

- F Hello. I'm Flavia. Flavia Rossi. What's your name?  
 T Hi Flavia. I'm Teresa. Teresa Adams.  
 F Do you work here in London, Teresa?  
 T Well, I work in London but I don't live in London. I live in Brighton.  
 F And what's your job?  
 T I'm a doctor. What's your job, Flavia? Do you work in London?  
 F Yes, I do. I work in a hotel. A big hotel near here.

- T Flavia, you aren't English, but you speak English very well. Where do you come from?  
 F I come from Italy, from Napoli. Or Naples I think you say.  
 T Ah, Italy. I love Italy.  
 F Do you know Naples?  
 T No, I don't. I don't know Naples, but I know Rome. I like Rome very much. It's very beautiful.  
 F Naples is beautiful too. Do you speak Italian, Teresa?  
 T No, I don't. I speak French but I don't speak Italian.  
 F It's nice to meet you, Teresa.  
 T You too.

T 5.14 T 5.15 T 5.16 see p39

### T 5.17 How much is it?

- 1 The cheese sandwich is £2.90.
- 2 The football is £14.
- 3 The iPhone is £90.95.
- 4 The coffee is £3.50.
- 5 The dictionary is £7.50.
- 6 The pair of jeans is £50.
- 7 The chocolate is 60p.
- 8 The bag is £44.99.



## UNIT 6

### T 6.1 The time

- 1 It's nine o'clock.
- 2 It's nine thirty.
- 3 It's nine forty-five.
- 4 It's ten o'clock.
- 5 It's ten fifteen.
- 6 It's two o'clock.
- 7 It's two thirty.
- 8 It's two forty-five.
- 9 It's three o'clock.
- 10 It's three fifteen.

T 6.2 see p40

### T 6.3 Kim's day

Kim Well, on schooldays I get up at seven forty-five. I have breakfast at eight and I go to school at eight thirty. I have lunch in school with my friends, that's at twelve fifteen – it's early in our school. I leave school at three thirty in the afternoon and I walk home with my friends. I get home at four thirty, have tea, and watch television. I go to bed at eleven o'clock on schooldays, but later at the weekend, of course!

T 6.4 see p41

### T 6.5 Elliot's day

He gets up at six o'clock and has a shower. He has breakfast at six forty-five. He leaves home at seven fifteen, and he goes to work by taxi. He has lunch, a cola and a sandwich, in his office at one o'clock. He always works late. He leaves work at eight o'clock in the evening. He sometimes buys a pizza and eats it at home. He gets home at nine fifteen. He never goes out in the evening. He works at his computer until eleven thirty. He always goes to bed at eleven forty-five. He watches television in bed.

### T 6.6

gets up has leaves works buys  
 goes watches

### T 6.7

He always works late.  
 He sometimes buys a pizza.  
 He never goes out in the evening.  
 He always goes to bed at eleven forty-five.

T 6.8 see p42

### T 6.9 Questions and negatives

- 1 What time does he get up?  
He gets up at six.
- 2 When does he go to bed?  
He goes to bed at eleven forty-five.
- 3 Does he go to work by taxi?  
Yes, he does.
- 4 Does he have lunch in a restaurant?  
No, he doesn't.
- 5 Does he go out in the evening?  
No, he doesn't.

### T 6.10

- 1 When does he leave home?  
He leaves home at 7.15.
- 2 Does he go to work by bus?  
No, he goes to work by taxi.
- 3 Where does he have lunch?  
He has lunch in his office.
- 4 Does he usually work late?  
Yes, he does, every day.
- 5 Does he eat in a restaurant?  
No, he doesn't. He eats at home.
- 6 What does he do in the evening?  
He works. He never goes out.

### T 6.11 Lois' Day

#### Lois Maddox

The seaside artist fills her day with work, walks, and friends.

Lois Maddox is twenty-five and she's an artist. She lives in a small house by the sea in Cape Cod, Massachusetts. She always gets up late, at ten o'clock in the morning. She has a big breakfast, coffee, eggs and toast – and then she goes to the beach. When she gets home, she works in her studio until seven o'clock in the evening. She never eats lunch but she always cooks a big dinner and she often invites friends. After dinner, she usually listens to the radio or plays chess. Sometimes she phones her brother, Elliot, in New York. She goes to bed very late, at one or two o'clock in the morning.



**T 6.12 On the phone****L= Lois, E = Elliot**

- L Hi Elliot, how are you?  
 E I'm fine, thanks. Busy as usual.  
 L Oh, you're always busy. You and your computers!  
 E I know, but I love my work.  
 L I love my work too, but I relax sometimes.  
 E Huh! I don't know about that. You paint all day!  
 L Yes, but I stop in the evening. You never stop!  
 E That's not true. Hey Lois, how's Aunt Nancy?  
 L Aunt Nancy? She's OK. You know, Elliot, Aunt Nancy often asks about you.  
 E Really? I like Aunt Nancy.  
 L Well, come and visit me soon. I want to cook for you and Aunt Nancy.  
 E Good idea! What about next weekend?  
 L Next Sunday?  
 L Yes, great! I often invite Aunt Nancy at the weekend.  
 E Great. See you on Sunday. Have a good week!

**T 6.13 Negatives and pronunciation**

- 1 She lives in a flat.  
She doesn't live in a flat! She lives in a house!
- 2 He gets up at ten o'clock.  
He doesn't get up at ten o'clock! He gets up at six o'clock!
- 3 She's a businesswoman.  
She isn't a businesswoman! She's an artist!
- 4 He goes to work by bus.  
He doesn't go to work by bus! He goes to work by taxi!
- 5 She watches television in the evening.  
She doesn't watch television in the evening! She listens to the radio or plays chess!

**T 6.14 Words that go together**

- |                     |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| get up early        | go shopping        |
| go to bed late      | drink coffee       |
| listen to the radio | eat in restaurants |
| watch TV            | have a shower      |
| cook dinner         | play chess         |
| work in an office   | stay at home       |

**T 6.15 Lifestyle questionnaire**

- 1 Do you get up early?
- 2 Do you have a big breakfast?
- 3 Do you walk to school or work?
- 4 Do you go to school or work by bus?
- 5 Do you watch TV in the evening?
- 6 Do you go shopping at the weekend?
- 7 Do you eat in restaurants?
- 8 Do you drink coffee?
- 9 Do you go to bed late?

**T 6.16 Days of the week**

Monday  
 Tuesday  
 Wednesday  
 Thursday  
 Friday  
 Saturday  
 Sunday

**UNIT 7****T 7.1 see p49****T 7.2**

- 1 Where do you live?  
I live in France, in Paris.
- 2 Who are you married to?  
Julien Caribe. He's French.
- 3 What does your husband do?  
He's a pianist.
- 4 When are you in Sydney again?  
Next October.
- 5 Who are the children in the photos?  
Our daughters Sophie and Sacha, and our son Pierre Louis.
- 6 How old are they?  
They're six, four, and ten months old.
- 7 Why do your children have French names?  
Because their father is French.
- 8 How many concerts do you do every year?  
About six.
- 9 Why do you work so hard?  
Because I love my work.
- 10 What do you do in your free time?  
I go out with my family.

**T 7.3**

Gina is a violinist. Paris is her favourite city. She loves it there. Next October she's in Sydney for a concert. She is married to a Frenchman. They have a baby son. Saturday is their favourite day.

**T 7.4 This and that**

- 1 A This is my favourite family photo.  
B Ah, yes. You all look very happy!
- 2 C Who's that?  
D The guy in the hat? That's the boss!
- 3 E What's that?  
F It's my new MP3 player.  
E Wow! It's great!
- 4 G How much is this?  
H £9.50.  
G I'll have it, please.
- 5 I How much is that?  
J It's £500.  
I I love it. It's fantastic!
- 6 K Is this your phone?  
L Yes, it is. Thanks.
- 7 M I like that coat.  
N The blue one?  
M No, the red one!
- 8 O I like this cheese.  
P Where's it from?  
O France. It's delicious.
- 9 Q This is for you.  
P A present? For me? Why?  
Q Because you're my wife!

**T 7.5 I like them!**

- 1 Do you like ice-cream?  
Yes, I love it.
- 2 Do you like cats?  
No, I hate them.
- 3 Do you like me?  
Of course I like you!
- 4 Does Mrs Johnson teach you French?  
No, she teaches us English.
- 5 Do you like your teacher?  
We like her very much.

**T 7.6 Questions and answers**

- 1 How do you come to school?  
By bus.
- 2 What do you have for breakfast?  
Toast and coffee.
- 3 Who's your favourite sportsperson?  
I don't have a favourite. I like a lot.
- 4 Where does your father work?  
In an office in the centre of town.
- 5 Why do you want to learn English?  
Because it's an international language.
- 6 How much money do you have on you?  
Not a lot. About £2.
- 7 What time do lessons start at your school?  
They start at nine o'clock.
- 8 How many languages does your teacher speak?  
Three.

**T 7.7 Adjectives**

- 1 A It's so hot today, isn't it?  
B I know. It's 35 degrees!
- 2 C Hey! I like your new shoes!  
D Thank you! They're really nice, aren't they?  
C They're fantastic!
- 3 E I live in a very small flat.  
F How many bedrooms do you have?  
E Only one!
- 4 G How much is that coat?  
H £150.  
G Wow! That's too expensive for me.
- 5 I Your name's Peter, isn't it?  
J Yes, that's right.  
I Nice to meet you, Peter.

**T 7.8 see p53****T 7.9**

- 1 Can I have a return ticket to Oxford, please.
- 2 I like this jumper. Can I try it on?
- 3 I want to post these letters to the Czech Republic, please.
- 4 Can I have a coffee, please?
- 5 Some aspirin, please.

**T 7.10****I= Iveta****1 In a railway station**

- I Can I have a return ticket to Oxford, please?  
 A Sure.  
 I How much is that?  
 A Twenty-two pounds fifty, please.  
 I Can I pay by credit card?  
 A No problem. Put your card in the machine. And enter your PIN number, please.



## 2 In a clothes shop

- I Hello. Can I try on this jumper, please?  
B Of course. The changing rooms are over there.

## 3 In a post office

- I Can I post these letters to the Czech Republic, please?  
C Sure. Put them on the scales. That's £1.68.  
I Thank you. How much is a stamp for a postcard to the United States?  
C Sixty-two p.  
I Can I have three, please?

## 4 In a café

- D Yes, please!  
I Can I have a coffee, please? With milk.  
D Large or small?  
I Small please. To take away.  
D Sure. Anything to eat?  
I No, thanks. Just a coffee.  
D Thanks a lot.

## 5 In a chemist's

- E Next, please!  
I Hello. Can I have some aspirin, please?  
E Twelve or twenty-four?  
I Pardon?  
E Do you want a packet of twelve aspirin or twenty-four?  
I Oh, twelve's fine, thanks.

- R Well, there's an old sofa but it's OK.  
M Mmm. And are there any chairs?  
R Yes, of course, there are chairs. There are two big armchairs.  
M Good. And a TV. Is there a TV?  
R Oh, yes, there is. The TV's really big. And I have a DVD player and a PlayStation\* and ...  
M A PlayStation\*? Why?  
R Mum, I love playing games!  
M OK, OK. So is there a desk?  
R There isn't a desk in the living room but there's one in the bedroom.  
M Good. Now, are there any pictures on the walls? Any photographs of your family?  
R Well, in the living room there are my posters of New York and Sydney but there aren't any photographs, they're all in my bedroom.  
M OK. Now your father and I want to see this flat. Can we visit next...?  
R Visit? You want to visit?  
M Yes. We're free next weekend. Can we come?  
R Er- next weekend -er sorry Mum, -er I think -er ...

### T 8.6 Robert's bedroom

- 1 His laptop is on the desk.
- 2 The CD player is next to the laptop.
- 3 There are three books on the floor next to his bed.
- 4 His car keys are in the drawer.
- 5 There's a football on the floor under the desk.
- 6 His trainers are next to his bag under his bed.

### T 8.7 Questions and answers

- 1 Do you live in a house or a flat?
- 2 How many bedrooms are there?
- 3 Is there a phone in the kitchen?
- 4 Is there a television in the living room?
- 5 Is there a DVD player under the television?
- 6 Are there a lot of books in your bedroom?
- 7 Are there any pictures on the wall?

### T 8.8 Which room is it?

There's a cat on the sofa, and there's a phone on a small table next to the sofa. There's a CD player with some CDs under it. Not a lot of CDs. There isn't a TV, and there aren't any pictures or photographs on the walls. There's one lamp. It's next to the table with the phone. There are two tables and two armchairs. There are some books under one of the tables.

### T 8.9 Vancouver – the best city in the world

Vancouver is called the 'best city in the world'. Why? Is it the spectacular mountains? The beautiful beaches? The excellent shops and restaurants? It's all of this and more!

#### Where is it?

Vancouver is in south-west Canada, next to the Pacific Ocean, 24 miles from the US border.

#### When to go

It is always a good time to visit Vancouver. The weather is never too cold or too hot. It is warm and sunny in summer but it rains a lot in autumn and winter.

## What to do

In spring, go skiing in the mountains in the morning and relax on the beach in the afternoon. In summer, go swimming, sailing or fishing or go walking in North America's biggest park, Stanley Park. There are excellent shops in Yaletown, and there is also theatre of every sort. Vancouver is the 'City of Festivals'.

## Where to eat

Vancouver is a cosmopolitan city, so there are French, Italian, Japanese, Indian, Thai, and Chinese restaurants. Vancouver's Chinatown is the second biggest in North America, after San Francisco. There is also a lot of delicious, fresh seafood.

## Where to stay

In the busy city centre there are some excellent, expensive hotels. The beautiful Fairmont Hotel is \$400 a night, but next to the sea there are a lot of cheap, comfortable hotels from \$59 a night.

## How to travel

You don't need a car in Vancouver. There are slow, old trolley buses and there is the fast, modern Sky Train. Take the ferry – it is a great way to see the city.

### T 8.10 My home town

Hi! My name's Steve and I live in Vancouver. I work at an international bank in the centre of the city but I live in English Bay near the beach. I have a small apartment there. Vancouver's a great city. It's really cosmopolitan. People from all over the world live here. Every Friday after work my wife and I go to Chinatown and have delicious Chinese food – it's my favourite.

I like the weather because it's never too hot or too cold, but it rains a lot and I don't like that.

I work hard and I play hard! I love sport and Vancouver's good for so many sports. In winter I go skiing every weekend, I like snowboarding too. In summer I go swimming and I play golf. I often go cycling with my wife. Sometimes we cycle along the Vancouver Seawall to the park – Stanley Park. The mountains look fantastic from there.

Why doesn't everyone want to live in Vancouver? It's the best place to live in the world!

### T 8.11 Who is it?

#### Conversation 1

Steve Morning. Monday again!

A Yeah. I hate Mondays and it's another busy day.

Steve I know. I have three meetings this morning.

#### Conversation 2

Steve Hi, can I meet you after work?

B Yeah, that's great.

Steve Six o'clock OK? We can go to that restaurant next to the Chinese supermarket.

B Fine. I want to go there again. The food's delicious.



## UNIT 8

### T 8.1 Rooms of a house

bathroom bedroom kitchen  
dining room living room

### T 8.2 Things in a house

a bed	an armchair
a cooker	a lamp
a sofa	a picture
a TV	a magazine
a shower	a DVD player
a toilet	a laptop
a table	a desk
a fridge	

### T 8.3 Robert's living room

My living room isn't very big, but I think it's great. There's an old sofa, and there are two armchairs. There's a table with a TV and a DVD player on it.

There's also a PlayStation\*. I love all the games. There are some books, and there are a lot of pictures and posters on the walls. There are two lamps. My room's not very tidy but it's really comfortable.

### T 8.4 see p57

### T 8.5 Robert and his mum

R = Robert, M = Mum

R Hi, Mum.

M Robert. How are you? How's the new flat?

R It's great, Mum. I love it. It's really comfortable.

M And tidy?

R Er- well ...

M So, tell me about it. Is there a nice sofa?



### Conversation 3

Steve Oh no! Rain again!

C It's not so bad.

Steve Yes it is. The sky's really black.

C You're right. No golf today, then!

### Conversation 4

Steve It's a lovely afternoon. Do you want to go out?

D Yeah, where do you want to go?

Steve What about Stanley Park?

D Great, I love that Park! The mountains look fantastic from there.

Steve Come on then! Let's get the bikes.

### T 8.12 Directions

- 1 Go up North Road. Turn left at the bank into Charles Street. It's on the right next to the theatre.
- 2 Go up North Road. Turn right at the school into Hillside Road, and it's on the left next to the chemist's.
- 3 Go up North Road. Turn right at the castle into Station Road. Go straight down, and it's on the right next to the car park.
- 4 Go straight on up North Road for five minutes, and it's in Albert Square. It's a big building on the right.
- 5 Go straight on up North Road. At the post office turn left into Park Lane. It's on the right, past the Chinese restaurant.



## UNIT 9

### T 9.1 Years

- 1 nineteen ninety-six
- 2 nineteen sixteen
- 3 two thousand and two
- 4 seventeen ninety-nine
- 5 eighteen forty
- 6 two thousand and five

### T 9.2 see p64

### T 9.3

#### Jane Austen

Jane Austen, the English writer, was born in 1775, in Hampshire, in the south of England.

#### Luciano Pavarotti

Luciano Pavarotti, the Italian opera singer, was born in 1935, in Modena, in the north of Italy.

### T 9.4 see p64

### T 9.5 see p65

### T 9.6 Magalie Dromard

My name's Magalie. It's a French name, but I'm not French. I'm English. I was born in 1994. I have two brothers and a sister. My eldest brother's a doctor. His name's Tristan, and he was born in 1985. My sister is also older than me. Her name's Cecilia and she's a teacher, and she was born in 1988. And my little brother is Matt, and he was born in 1996. He's still a student. My father is French. His name's André, he's from Marseille, and he was born in, I think ... 1958. My mother is English, her name's Ella, she's from Manchester, and she was born in, er ... 1961. My grandmother, who

is my mother's mother, is called Edith. Isn't that a lovely name? She was born in Bristol in ... I'm not sure, but I think about 1935.

### T 9.7 When were they born?

- 1 Shakespeare was born in 1564 in Stratford-upon-Avon, England.
- 2 Mozart was born in Salzburg, Austria, in 1756.
- 3 Diana Spencer was born in Sandringham, England, in 1961.
- 4 Umm Kalthoum was born in 1898 in Mansoura, in Egypt.
- 5 Bruce Lee was born in 1940 in San Francisco, in the US.
- 6 Benazir Bhutto was born in Karachi, Pakistan, in 1953.
- 7 Vincent Van Gogh was born in 1853 in Zundert, Holland.
- 8 Ayrton Senna was born in 1960 in São Paulo, Brazil.

### T 9.8 see p66

### T 9.9 see p67

### T 9.10

- 1 A Ayrton Senna was an actor.  
B No, he wasn't! He was a racing driver!
- 2 A Jane Austen was a princess.  
B No, she wasn't! She was a writer!
- 3 A Shakespeare and Jane Austen were artists.  
B No, they weren't! They were writers!
- 4 A Mozart was a scientist.  
B No, he wasn't! He was a musician!
- 5 A Luciano Pavarotti and Umm Kalthoum were politicians.  
B No, they weren't! They were singers!
- 6 A Benazir Bhutto was a writer.  
B No, she wasn't! She was a politician!

### T 9.11

go	went
come	came
have	had
be	was
make	made
see	saw
buy	bought
say	said
find	found

### T 9.12 Who is Jackson Pollock?

Teri Horton, a 60-year-old lady from Los Angeles, went shopping in San Bernardino, a town in California, USA. She was in a charity shop when she saw a colourful, modern painting. She bought it for \$5.

An art teacher saw the painting and said it was by the American artist, Jackson Pollock. 'Who is Jackson Pollock?' said Teri. She had no idea that he was a very famous modern painter. Many art experts came to her house to see the painting. Some said that it wasn't a 'Pollock', but one expert, Peter Paul Biró, found Pollock's fingerprint on the back. Biró said, 'This is a real Pollock painting'.

A rich man was happy to pay \$9 million for it, but Teri said: 'No! I want \$50 million.'

In 2007, a Canadian TV company made a film about Teri and the painting. It is now for sale in an art gallery in Toronto. Price: \$50 million!

### T 9.13

- 1 Yesterday I met my mother at one o'clock and we had lunch in a restaurant.
- 2 I hate doing housework but last Sunday I did a lot because my house was a mess.
- 3 Yesterday was a lovely day so I went for a walk in the park.
- 4 Usually I walk but yesterday I went to work by bus.
- 5 On Saturday night I went to a great restaurant. I had a really nice meal.
- 6 I did a lot of exercise yesterday. I went to the gym.
- 7 The film wasn't very good so we went home early.

### T 9.14 Months of the year

January February March April May  
June July August September October  
November December

### T 9.15 T 9.16 see p71

### T 9.17

the first of January  
the third of March  
the seventh of April  
the twentieth of May  
the second of June  
the twelfth of August  
the fifteenth of November  
the thirty-first of December



## UNIT 10

### T 10.1 Angie's weekend

Yesterday was Sunday, so I got up late, about 11.30. I had a big breakfast, orange juice, toast, eggs, and coffee. Then I went shopping, just to the supermarket, and I bought some tea, some milk, and the Sunday papers. Then I just stayed at home for the rest of the day. In the morning I cleaned my flat and in the afternoon I did some work on my computer for a bit, then in the evening I watched a film on TV. I went to bed early, about 11.00. I was tired. I had a late night on Saturday.

### T 10.2 Regular verbs

/t/	cooked
	watched
/d/	played
	listened
/ɪd/	started
	wanted



**T 10.3****A = Angie, R = Rose**

- A Hi, Rose. Did you have a good weekend?  
 R Yes, I did, thanks.  
 A What did you do yesterday?  
 R Well, I got up early and I played tennis with some friends.  
 A You got up early on Sunday!  
 R Well, yes, it was such a lovely day.  
 A Where did you play tennis?  
 R In the park. We had lunch in the café there.  
 A Oh, great! Did you go out in the evening?  
 R No, I didn't. I cooked a meal for my sister.  
 A Mmm! What did you have?  
 R Roast beef. It was delicious! What about you Angie? Did you have a good weekend?

**T 10.4 p73****T 10.5 Angie's weekend****A = Angie, R = Rose**

- R What about you Angie? Did you have a good weekend?  
 A Oh yes, I did, very good.  
 R What did you do on Saturday?  
 A Well, on Saturday morning I went shopping. Then on Saturday evening I went to a dinner party. It was great!  
 R Who did you see at the dinner party?  
 A Oh, one or two old friends.  
 R Did you go out on Sunday?  
 A Oh no, I didn't. I didn't go out because I was too tired. I stayed at home most of the day.  
 R Did you do anything on Sunday evening?  
 A No, I didn't do much. I just watched a film on TV. I didn't go to bed late. About 11.00.

**T 10.6 see p73****T 10.7 Making conversation**

- I went shopping yesterday. Really? Where did you go?
- We went to that new Lebanese restaurant last night. Mmm! What did you have?
- We saw a lot of our friends in the coffee bar. Oh! Who did you see?
- I played tennis at the weekend. Oh, really? Where did you play?
- The picnic on Saturday was great! Oh, good! What time did you leave?

**T 10.8 Making conversation**

- A I went shopping yesterday.  
 B Really? Where did you go?  
 A Oxford Street.  
 B Oh! What did you buy?  
 A Well, I wanted a new coat, and I went into the new mall.  
 B Did you find one?  
 A Yes, I did. I found a beautiful black one. It was only £50!
- A Tom and I went to that new Lebanese restaurant last night.  
 B Mmm! What did you have?  
 A Well, I had lamb schwarma and Tom had fattoush.  
 B Did you enjoy it?  
 A Very much. And it wasn't expensive.

- A We saw a lot of our friends in the coffee bar.  
 B Oh! Who did you see?  
 A Angie and Rose and some other friends from work.  
 B I don't think I know them.  
 A They're very nice.
- A I played tennis at the weekend.  
 B Oh, really? Where did you play?  
 A In the park. It was lovely. It was so sunny.  
 B What a great thing to do on a Sunday morning!
- A The picnic on Saturday was great!  
 B Oh, good! What time did you leave?  
 A About six in the evening. The food was fantastic!  
 B Did you eat a lot?  
 A Of course!

**T 10.9 Jack and Millie Parker's holiday****J = Jack, M = Millie**

- J Well, we usually go on holiday in summer ...  
 M Yes, usually we go to Italy for our holidays, don't we?  
 J But last year we did something different. We had a holiday in winter, and we went to Colorado, in America.  
 M Because we wanted to learn to ski, you see, and we wanted a change. In Italy we always stay in a villa ...  
 J ... but in Colorado we stayed in a very nice hotel, and because we were in a hotel, we had all our meals in restaurants.  
 M And that's very special for us. In Italy we cook at home in the villa. But in Colorado we went to a different restaurant every night!  
 J In Italy, because it's summer and it's hot, we go swimming in the swimming pool, and sit in the sun, and I play tennis sometimes ...  
 M Jack loves his tennis, don't you darling?  
 J I do, but of course last year in Colorado we learned to ski, so we went skiing every day. And Millie, you went ice-skating, didn't you?  
 M We both went ice-skating!  
 J That's right! It was great fun! In Italy in the evening, we usually read ...  
 M ... but last year in Colorado we went out every night, and we met lots of lovely people, didn't we?  
 J We did. We had a really good time.

**T 10.10**

- Last year Jack and Millie didn't go on holiday in summer. They went in winter.
- They didn't go to Italy. They went to Colorado.
- They stayed in a hotel. They didn't stay in a villa.
- They didn't eat at home. They ate in restaurants.
- They went skiing. They didn't go swimming.

**T 10.11**

- A Hello. Can I help you?  
 B Yes. Can I have a map of the city, please?  
 A Of course. Here you are.  
 B Can you show me where we are on the map?  
 A Yes. We're here in Regent Street in the city centre.

- C We want to go on a bus tour of the city.  
 A That's fine. The next bus leaves at 10.00. It takes about an hour and a half.  
 C Where does the bus go from?  
 A It goes from Trafalgar Square, but you can get on and off when you want.
- D I want to visit the British Museum. What time does it open?  
 A It opens at 10.00 in the morning and closes at 5.30 in the evening.  
 D How much is it to get in?  
 A It's free!

**UNIT 11****T 11.1**

- Marcus is an interpreter. He can speak French and German fluently.
- Laura is an architect. She can draw well.
- Justin is a pilot. He can fly 747 jumbo jets.
- George is a farmer. He can drive a tractor.
- Lee is an athlete. He can run very fast.
- Oliver is a schoolboy. He can use a computer really well.
- Margaret is Oliver's grandmother. She can make fantastic cakes.

**T 11.2 T 11.3 see p81****T 11.4 Of course I can!****D = Dominique, O = Oliver**

- D Can you use a computer, Oliver?  
 O Yes, of course I can. All my friends can. I use a computer at home in my bedroom and we use computers at school all the time.  
 D That's great. What other things can you do?  
 O Well, I can run fast, very fast, and I can draw a bit. I can draw really good cars but I can't drive them of course! I can draw good planes, too. When I'm big I want to be a pilot and fly 747s.  
 D Excellent. Now, I know you can speak French.  
 O Yes, I can. I can speak French fluently because my dad's French. We sometimes speak French at home.  
 D Can you speak any other languages?  
 O No, I can't. I can't speak German or Spanish, just French – and English of course! And I can cook! I can make cakes. My grandma makes fantastic cakes and I sometimes help her. Yesterday we made a big chocolate cake!

**T 11.5 Pronunciation**

- I can ski quite well.
- She can't speak German at all.
- He can speak English fluently.
- Why can't you come to my house?
- We can't understand our teacher.
- They can read.
- Can I have an ice-cream, please?
- Can cats swim?



**T 11.6 Jenni Spencer**

I live in the city of Tucumán. I teach English. I can speak Spanish fluently and German a little bit.

I love it here. On Saturday night I go out with friends. A lot of my friends can speak English really well. On Sundays I often go riding here. I can ride quite well now. Or sometimes I watch friends playing golf. I can't play golf but I like watching it. Sunday is also the day for 'asado' or barbecues. We always cook beef, I can't cook at all but I want to learn. It's a great life here, everyone is really friendly.

**T 11.7 Requests and offers**

- 1 A Can I help you?  
B Yes, please. I want to buy this postcard.
- 2 A Can you tell me the time, please?  
B It's about three thirty.
- 3 A Can you come to my dinner party?  
B Sorry. I can't. It's my brother's wedding on Saturday.
- 4 A Can I have a glass of water, please?  
B Yes, of course. Here you are.
- 5 A Can you speak more slowly, please?  
B I'm sorry. Is this better? Can you understand me now?
- 6 A Can I give you a lift?  
B Oh, yes please! That's so kind of you!

**T 11.8 see p84****T 11.9 What do you do on the Internet?**

- 1 **Charlotte, age 14**  
I use the Internet a lot. Every day, I think. It helps me with my homework. I 'google' for information or I use *Wikipedia*. It helps me with everything, history, geography, science, English - er everything. Yesterday I got a lot information about Jane Austen.
- 2 **Lauren, age 20**  
I really like poetry and I can find lots of great poems on the Internet. Yesterday I got the words of a sonnet, you know, by Shakespeare. I use the Internet mostly in the evenings, when I have time.
- 3 **Mike, age 23**  
I go on the Internet a lot, sometimes three or four times a day. It's a great way to hear all your friends' news and see all their photographs. Yesterday I posted all the photos from my holiday. You can see them if you want.
- 4 **Alan Krum, age 47**  
Well, my surname, -er my family name is Krum and I want to write about my family, so I use the Internet to find out about my family's history. There are special websites for this. Also, I can chat to people with the same name from all over the world, Canada, Germany, Argentina. It's really interesting. I usually use it on Sundays because I have more time then.

**5 Max, age 10**

I play games a lot. And I go on websites for my favourite football players. I want to be on the computer all the time, but my mum says I can't. She says I can only use it after school for an hour, and then I stop.

**6 Edna, age 71**

I go shopping on the Internet. Every Friday I go to my son's house and I use his computer. It's fantastic - the supermarket brings all my shopping to my home. I want a computer now. I want to send emails to my friends. Most of my friends have computers.

**T 11.10 Adjectives and nouns**

- 1 A A Ferrari is a fantastic car. It's so fast.  
B Yeah, I know, but it's also so expensive.
- 2 A How tall is your brother?  
B He's very tall, 1.9 metres. I'm only 1.7 metres.
- 3 A I think motor racing is a really dangerous sport.  
B I know it's dangerous but it's exciting too. That's why I love it!
- 4 A Can I have a fresh orange juice, please?  
B I'm afraid we don't have fresh.  
A OK. Just a glass of water then.
- 5 A New York is a very cosmopolitan city.  
I love it.  
B Me too. I can't believe I'm here.
- 6 A Charlie Chaplin made some very funny films, don't you think?  
B No. I don't like his films. I think they're really boring.
- 7 A We can't go for a walk, it's too cold and wet.  
B Yes, we can. Look it's sunny again! Come on!

**T 11.11 Everyday problems**

- 1 A Excuse me! Can you help me? I'm lost.  
B Where do you want to go?  
A Grand Central Station.  
B Turn left onto Park Avenue. It's straight on. You can't miss it.
- 2 A Oh, no!  
B What's the matter?  
A There's something wrong with my computer. I can't get on the Internet, so I can't send my emails.  
B Turn everything off and try again. That sometimes works.
- 3 A Excuse me! This ticket machine doesn't work.  
B Did you push the green button?  
A Oh! No, I didn't.  
B Ah, well. Here's your ticket.  
A Thank you very much.
- 4 A Come on! It's time to go to the airport.  
B But I can't find my passport! I can't find it anywhere!  
A You put it in your bag.  
B Did I? Oh, yes. Here it is! Phew!
- 5 A Are you all right?  
B Yes, I think so.  
A Does your arm hurt?  
B It hurts a bit, but I think it's OK.

**6 A I'm so sorry I'm late.**

- B It's OK. The film starts in 15 minutes.  
A I missed the bus.  
B I told you, it doesn't matter. Come on! Let's go.

**UNIT 12****T 12.1 What can you do where?**

- 1 You can buy newspapers and magazines in a newsagent's.
- 2 You can buy bread, milk, fruit, and meat in a supermarket.
- 3 You can change your money in a bank.
- 4 You can buy stamps and send a parcel in a post office.
- 5 You can buy a dictionary in a bookshop.
- 6 You can get an espresso in a coffee shop.
- 7 You can buy shampoo and conditioner in a chemist's.

**T 12.2 Saying what you want**

- 1 **Adam** Good morning. I'd like some chicken, please.  
**B** How much would you like?  
**Adam** Four slices.  
**B** Would you like anything else?  
**Adam** Yes, I'd like some cheese. Do you have any Emmental?  
**B** I'm afraid we don't have any Emmental. What about mozzarella?  
**Adam** No, thank you. Just the chicken then. How much is that?
- 2 **C** Can I help you?  
**Adam** Yes, please, I'd like some shampoo.  
**C** We have lots. Would you like it for dry or normal hair?  
**Adam** Dry, I think.  
**C** OK. Try this one. Anything else?  
**Adam** Er- oh yeah. I don't have any conditioner. I'd like some conditioner for dry hair, please.  
**C** Yes, of course. That's £6.90 please.

**T 12.3 Where is Adam?**

- 1 **D** Is that all? The Times and two magazines?  
**Adam** Yes, that's all. Oh, I nearly forgot - I'd like this computer magazine, too.  
**D** Yes. Anything else?  
**Adam** That's it, thanks..  
**D** OK. Would you like a bag?  
**Adam** No, thanks. I don't need a bag.  
**D** That's £9.65.
- 2 **Adam** I'd like an espresso, please.  
**E** Drink here or take away?  
**Adam** To drink here, please.  
**E** Small, medium or large?  
**Adam** Medium, please.  
**E** Would you like something to eat?  
**Adam** Er - yes. I'd like some chocolate cake.  
**E** Sure. Anything else?  
**Adam** That's it, thanks.



**T 12.4 Lewis and Adam****A = Adam, L = Lewis**

- A What would you like to drink?  
 L A juice. I'd like an apple juice, please.  
 A Er ... I have some orange juice, but I don't have any apple juice.  
 L Don't worry. Orange juice is fine. Thanks.  
 A Would you like something to eat?  
 L Yeah, OK. A sandwich. A cheese sandwich?  
 A Er ... I don't have any cheese. Sorry. I have some chicken. Would you like a chicken sandwich?  
 L I don't like chicken.  
 A Would you like some cake, then?  
 L Yes, please. I'd love some.

**T 12.5 It's my birthday!**

- A Hey, isn't it your birthday soon?  
 B Yeah, next week on the 15th.  
 A So, what would you like for your birthday?  
 B I don't know. I don't need anything.  
 A But, I'd like to buy you something.  
 B That's kind but I think I'd like to forget my birthday this year.  
 A What? You don't want any presents! Why not?  
 B Well, I'm 30 next week and that feels old.  
 A 30 isn't old. Come on. I'd like to take you out for a meal with some friends. You can choose the restaurant.  
 B OK, then. Thank you. I'd like that. Just don't tell anyone it's my birthday.  
 A Oh, that's silly!

**T 12.6 Birthday wishes**

- Kelly** What would I like for my birthday?  
 That's easy! I'd like to have breakfast in bed. With the newspapers. And in the evening I'd like to go to the theatre.  
**Mike** Well, I'd like a new computer, because my computer is so old that new programs don't work on it. And then in the evening I'd like to go to a good restaurant. I don't mind if it's Italian, French, Chinese or English. Just good food.  
**Jade** I'd love a new mobile phone. My mobile is so old now. I'd like one that takes good photos. Your phone has a really good camera and it wasn't that expensive. And in the evening I'd like to go out with all my friends and have a great time!

**T 12.7 see p91****T 12.8 Listening and pronunciation**

- 1 A What would you like? Would you like a coffee?  
 B Yes, please. I'm very thirsty.  
 2 A What sort of thing do you like doing at the weekend?  
 B Well, I like watching films.  
 3 A What sort of flat do you want to move into?  
 B Well ...  
 C We'd like a flat with two bedrooms. Somewhere near the centre.  
 4 A We have this weekend free. What would you like to do?  
 B I'd like to go into town and eat at that new restaurant!  
 A Okay!

- 5 A What do you spend all your money on?  
 B Well, I like new clothes. I buy new clothes every week.

**T 12.9 In a restaurant****W = Waiter, L = Liam, M = Maddy**

- W Are you ready to order?  
 L Well, I am. Are you ready, Maddy?  
 M Yes, I am. What's the soup of the day?  
 W French onion soup.  
 M Lovely. I'd like the French onion soup to start, please.  
 W And to follow?  
 M I'd like the salmon salad with some chips on the side.  
 W Thank you. And you, sir? What would you like?  
 L Er - I'd like the tomato and mozzarella salad, followed by the burger and chips.  
 W Would you like any side orders?  
 L No, thank you. Just the burger.  
 W And to drink?  
 M Sparkling water for me, please. What about you, Liam?  
 L The same for me. We'd like a bottle of sparkling water, please.  
 W Fine. I'll bring the drinks immediately.

**T 12.10 Signs all around**

- 1 Hey, look! That lovely red jumper is only £19.99 now.  
 2 Oh, no. I put my money in before I saw the sign.  
 3 Can you tell me where the toilets are, please?  
 4 This is our table. It has our name on it.  
 5 I'm not waiting. There are so many people.  
 6 Which floor is our room on? Is it the 6th or 7th?  
 7 Oh, dear we're too late. It doesn't open again until Monday now.  
 8 I'm sorry, but you can't walk here. Didn't you see the sign on the gate?

**UNIT 13****T 13.1 Clothes**

- |                        |             |
|------------------------|-------------|
| 1 a jumper             | 7 trainers  |
| 2 a shirt and tie      | 8 a jacket  |
| 3 a T-shirt and shorts | 9 a scarf   |
| 4 a skirt              | 10 boots    |
| 5 a dress              | 11 a suit   |
| 6 shoes and socks      | 12 trousers |

**T 13.2 What are they wearing?**

- 1 Nigel's wearing a grey suit and a white shirt. He's reading his emails.  
 2 Leo's wearing a yellow T-shirt and white trainers. He's running.  
 3 Rick's wearing blue jeans and a black T-shirt. He's carrying trays of drinks.  
 4 Eva's wearing a green jacket and brown boots. She's carrying a black bag.  
 5 Polly and Penny are wearing yellow dresses and blue shoes. They're eating ice-cream.

**T 13.3 see p97****T 13.4 Asking questions**

- 1 What's he doing?  
 He's cooking dinner for friends.  
 2 What's he doing?  
 He's driving to London.  
 3 What's he doing?  
 He's having a shower after work.  
 4 What's she doing?  
 She's writing an email to her mother.  
 5 What's she doing?  
 She's skiing in France.  
 6 What's she doing?  
 She's eating a strawberry ice-cream.  
 7 What are they doing?  
 They're running fast.  
 8 What are they doing?  
 They're shopping in a mall.  
 9 What are they doing?  
 They're playing golf in the rain.

**T 13.5 Nigel at work**

Nigel is a businessman. He works from 9 o'clock to 5.30 every day. He always wears a suit and tie for work. He usually has lunch at his desk at one o'clock. He arrives home at about seven o'clock every evening and he reads to his children before they go to bed. He often feels very tired at the end of the day.

**T 13.6 see p99****T 13.7 Questions about Nigel**

- 1 Are they having a good time?  
 Yes, they are.  
 2 Where are they staying?  
 They're staying in a house with a swimming pool near the beach.  
 3 What are the children doing?  
 They're swimming in the pool.  
 4 What's Karen doing?  
 She's drinking lemonade.  
 5 What's Nigel doing?  
 He's talking on the phone.  
 6 Is he wearing a suit?  
 No, he isn't.  
 7 Why is Bill calling?  
 Because he has a problem.

**T 13.8 Four conversations**

**C = Colin, R = Roger, M = Margaret,**  
**CW = Colin's wife, CS = Colin's sons,**  
**B = boys in the hostel**

**Conversation 1**

- C Hello, I'm Colin.  
 R Hi, Colin. Lovely to meet you. This is my wife Margaret.  
 M It's very good of you to come and help us.  
 C I'm pleased to be here.

**Conversation 2**

- C That's much better. Now, read it again.  
 B *There was a man who work -ed, worked hard and his busi- busi*  
 C *Business*  
 B *... his business became very suc - suc -*  
 C *cess - ful, successful!*  
 C Great. You're doing well.



### Conversation 3

- C Hello, darling.  
CW Colin! How are you? We're all missing you.  
C I'm missing you too but I'm having a good time. It's very interesting here. Roger and Margaret are wonderful people.

### Conversation 4

- C Hi, boys!  
CS Dad! Hi! We're doing our homework.  
C Hey, that's good. I'm working hard too.  
CS Are you having a good time?  
C I am. I'm with some really interesting people.  
CS Can we meet them?  
C Yes, you can. I'd like you to meet them.  
CS See you soon, Dad.  
C Yeah, can't wait! See you soon!

### T 13.9 Opposite verbs

- 1 Please don't ask me any more questions, I can't answer them.
- 2 I'm selling my old car, and I'm buying a new one!
- 3 We always get up at seven in the morning and go to bed at eleven at night.
- 4 It was cold, so Tom took off his T-shirt and put on a warm jumper.
- 5 I usually walk to school but yesterday I was late so I ran all the way.
- 6 John's playing tennis with Peter today. He always loses. He never wins.
- 7 Don't turn off the TV, I'm watching it! Please turn it on again!

### T 13.10

- 1 A Would you like an espresso?  
B No, thank you, I hate black coffee.  
A Do you? I love it.
- 2 C What time does the film start?  
D 6.45.  
C And do you know when it finishes?  
D About 8.30, I think.
- 3 E Would you like to play tennis after work?  
F Sorry, I can't. I'm working late again.
- 4 G Our train leaves London at 13.55.  
H And what time does it arrive in Paris?  
G 16.05.  
H Wow! That's fast.
- 5 I Did you remember to bring your dictionary?  
J Oh, sorry. I forgot it.  
I Not again!
- 6 K Can I open the window? I'm hot.  
L Of course. Just remember to close it when you leave the room.

### T 13.11 What's the matter?

- 1 She's cold.
- 2 He's hungry.
- 3 They're tired.
- 4 He's thirsty.
- 5 They're hot.
- 6 She's bored.
- 7 He's angry.
- 8 She's worried.
- 9 He has a headache.
- 10 She has a cold.

### T 13.12 Why don't you...?

- 1 A What's the matter?  
B I'm tired and thirsty.  
A Why don't you have a cup of tea?  
B That's a good idea.  
A Sit down. I'll make it for you.

- 2 C What's the matter?  
D I have a bad headache.  
C Oh dear! Why don't you take some aspirin?  
D I don't have any.  
C It's OK. I have some.



## UNIT 14

### T 14.1 Bill and Gloria's holiday

- 1 On Sunday they're flying to London.
- 2 On Monday they're going to have a bus tour of London.
- 3 On Tuesday they're travelling through Belgium and into Germany.
- 4 On Wednesday they're going to drive down to the Alps and Austria.
- 5 On Thursday they're going to drive over the Europa Bridge.
- 6 On Friday they're going to stop in Verona. They're going to see Juliet's balcony.
- 7 On Saturday evening they're having dinner in a bistro in Paris.
- 8 On Sunday morning they're going to the Louvre to see the Mona Lisa. In the evening, they're flying back to the US.

### T 14.2 see p105

### T 14.3

- 1 What are they doing on Tuesday?
- 2 What are they going to do on Wednesday?
- 3 When are they going to drive over the Europa Bridge?
- 4 What are they going to do in Verona?
- 5 Where are they having dinner on Saturday?
- 6 When are they going to the Louvre?
- 7 When are they flying back to the US?

### T 14.4 Eddie's plans

- F = Friend, E = Eddie
- F What are you doing?  
E I'm planning my holiday.  
F Oh, where are you going?  
E I'm going to South Africa. It's my first time.  
F Oh you're so lucky! When are you leaving?  
E I'm leaving next Monday morning.  
F Who are you going with?  
E I'm not going with anyone. Just me and my rucksack.  
F Where are you going to stay?  
E Well, I'm staying with friends in Cape Town. Then I'm going on safari. I'm going to sleep in a tent.  
F Fantastic! And how are you going to travel?  
E By plane to Cape Town, of course, and then by jeep when I'm on safari.  
F By jeep! How exciting. And how long are you going to stay?  
E Just two weeks. I'd like to stay longer but I can't. It's too expensive.  
F How much is it going to cost?  
E About £2,000.  
F Mmmm, that's quite a lot. Well, have a great time. I can't wait to see your photos.  
E Oh, yes, I'm going to take a lot of photos.

### T 14.5 Pronunciation

#### Two syllables

pilot	hotel
women	arrive
married	shampoo
chocolate	enjoy

### T 14.6 Pronunciation

#### Three syllables

photograph	banana
vegetable	magazine
interesting	understand
designer assistant	souvenir

### T 14.7 Rhymes

1 some	home	come
2 goes	knows	does
3 were	here	her
4 make	steak	speak
5 near	wear	there
6 eat	great	wait

### T 14.8 Past, Present, and Future

**Milena Dušek** My father is a journalist, and works for a newspaper called Blesk. My mother works as a chef in a restaurant in the Old Town.

**Georg Reinhardt** I was born in Frankfurt, where I grew up and went to school. I studied architecture at the University of Munich. I met Karlotta at university – she was a student of modern languages. We moved to Berlin in 1995.

**Archie McCrae** I went to Drumchapel High School. I studied biology, chemistry, and physics. At school I met Fiona, and we got married when we were 22. We studied medicine together at the same university, and we now live in Edinburgh.

### T 14.9

#### Social expressions 2

- 1 A Good luck in the exam! I hope it goes well.  
B Thanks. I'll do my best.  
A See you later. Bye!
- 2 C Oh, no!  
D Don't worry. It doesn't matter.  
C I'm so sorry!
- 3 E Have a good weekend!  
F Thanks! Same to you! What are you doing? Anything special?  
E We're going to a wedding.  
F Oh, lovely!
- 4 G Goodbye! Drive carefully!  
H Thanks! I'll phone you when I arrive.  
G See you again soon!
- 5 I I have a present for you.  
J For me? Why?  
I It's just to say thank-you.  
J That's so kind of you!
- 6 K Bye! And thanks for everything!  
L It was a pleasure. We enjoyed having you.



# Grammar Reference

## UNIT 1

### 1.1 am/are/is

I	'm am	Ben.
You	're are	Miki.
My name	's is	James Bond.
This	is	Judy Koblenz.

### 1.2 Questions with question words

*What's your name?*  
(what's = what is)

*How are you?*

### 1.3 Possessive adjectives

*My name's John.*  
*What's your name?*

### 1.4 Plural nouns

- Most nouns add -s.  

book	→	books
computer	→	computers
camera	→	cameras
- Some nouns add -es.  

sandwich	→	sandwiches
bus	→	buses

## UNIT 2

### 2.1 am/are/is

I'm (am)	from England. a student.
You're (are)	
He's (is) She's (is)	
It's (is)	a computer.
They're (are)	in Muscat. married.

### 2.2 Possessive adjectives

*His name's Pablo.*  
*What's her name?*

*My name's Ahmed.*  
*What's your name?*

- his = possessive adjective  
his name, his car, his camera

*He's Bruno. He's from Brazil. He's fine.*  
(he's = he is)

### 2.3 Questions with question words

Where	are you is she is he	from?
What	's your (is your) 's her (is her)	name?

### 2.4 am/are/is

I'm (am)	from England. a student. fine. in Paris. in Dubai. married.
You're (are)	
He's She's (is) It's	
They're (are)	



## UNIT 3

### 3.1 am/are/is

#### Negative

I	'm not (am not)	a teacher. from Syria.
He She	isn't (is not)	married. very well.

#### Yes/No questions and short answers

Are you married?	Yes, I am. No, I'm not.
Is she a teacher?	Yes, she is. No, she isn't.
Is he English?	Yes, he is. No, he isn't.
Is her name Alice?	Yes, it is. No, it isn't.

### 3.2 Verb to be

#### Positive

I	'm (am)	from the US.
He She It	's (is)	
You We They	're (are)	

#### Negative

I	'm not	English.
He She It	isn't	
You We They	aren't	

#### Questions with question words

What	is your name? is her address? is his phone number?
Where	are you from? is he from? are they from?
How old	are you? are they?

#### Answers

John Mason.  
16, Albert Road, Bristol.  
01693 456729.

From Japan.

I'm 16.  
They're 8 and 10.

#### Yes/No questions

Is	he she it	Indian?
Are	you we they	married?

#### Short answers

Yes, he is.  
No, she isn't.  
Yes, it is.

Yes, I am.  
No, we aren't.  
No, they aren't.

## UNIT 4

### 4.1 Possessive adjectives

This is	my your his her our their	family. school. office.
---------	--	-------------------------------

### 4.2 Possessive 's

's shows possession.

This is John. This is his son. → This is John's son.  
This is Marie. This is her car. → This is Marie's car.

his house → Tom's house  
her name → your wife's name

! 's is also the short form of is.

he's = he is  
she's = she is  
it's = it is  
Who's = Who is

### 4.3 Plural nouns

- Most nouns add -s in the plural.  
doctor → doctors  
book → books  
student → students
- Nouns that end in -s, -ss, -sh, or -ch add -es.  
bus → buses  
class → classes  
sandwich → sandwiches
- Some nouns that end in -y change to -ies.  
city → cities  
country → countries  
dictionary → dictionaries
- Some nouns are irregular.  
man → men  
woman → women  
child → children

### 4.4 have/has

Have is an irregular verb.

I You We They	have	a good job. a computer.
He She It	has	



## UNIT 5

### 5.1 Present Simple: I / you / we / they

#### Positive

I	like coffee.
You	play tennis.
We	live in London.
They	speak two languages. have a good job.

#### Negative

I	don't	like tennis.
You		speak French.
We		work in a restaurant.
They		

#### Questions with question words

Where	do	you live?
What sports		we like?
How many languages		they speak?

#### Yes/No questions and short answers

Do you like football?	Yes, I do. No, I don't.
Do they speak English?	Yes, they do. No, they don't.

❗ Do you like tea? Yes, I do. NOT Yes, I like.

### 5.2 a / an

We use *an* before words that begin with *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, and *u*.

*an* engineer  
*an* English dictionary  
*an* ice-cream  
*an* orange  
*an* umbrella

but

*a* car  
*a* burger  
*a* television

### 5.3 Adjective + noun

Adjectives always come *before* the noun.

*a German car* NOT *a car German*  
*a Japanese camera* NOT *a camera Japanese*  
*a beautiful tree* NOT *a tree beautiful*

❗ *Spanish oranges* NOT *Spanishes oranges*

## UNIT 6

### 6.1 Present Simple: he / she / it

#### Positive

He	gets up	at 8.00.
She		
It	leaves	

### 6.2 Spelling – Present Simple: he / she / it

1 Most verbs add *-s*.

*he/she/it* | *listens*  
*leaves*  
*walks*

2 Verbs ending in *-s*, *-ss*, *-sh*, *-ch* add *-es*.

*he/she/it* | *watches*  
*washes*

❗ *go*, *have*, and *do* are irregular.

*he/she/it* | *does*  
*goes*  
*has*

### 6.3 Adverbs of frequency



Adverbs of frequency (*never*, *sometimes*, *usually*, *always*) can come before the verb.

*We never watch TV.*  
*She sometimes goes out on a Saturday night.*  
*He usually works late.*  
*I always have tea for breakfast.*

### 6.4 Present Simple: he / she / it

#### Negative

She	doesn't	go out in the evening.
He		eat in a restaurant.

#### Questions with question words

What	does	he have for lunch?
Where		she work?
What time		he go to bed?
When		he leave work?

#### Yes/No questions and short answers

Does he like football?	Yes, he does. No, he doesn't.
Does she speak English?	Yes, she does. No, she doesn't.

❗ Does he like tea? Yes, he does. NOT Yes, he likes.  
Do you like coffee? No, I don't. NOT No, I don't like.



## UNIT 7

### 7.1 Question words

Look at the question words and the answers.

<b>What?</b>	A burger.	<b>How?</b>	By taxi.
<b>When?</b>	In the evening.	<b>How old?</b>	16.
<b>What time?</b>	At 8.00.	<b>How many?</b>	Two.
<b>Who?</b>	Peter.	<b>How much?</b>	\$2.
<b>Where?</b>	In Jeddah.	<b>Why?</b>	Because ...

### 7.2 Pronouns

Look at the subject and object pronouns, and the possessive adjectives.

<b>Subject pronouns</b>	I	you	he	she	it	we	they
<b>Object pronouns</b>	me	you	him	her	it	us	them
<b>Possessive adjectives</b>	my	your	his	her	its	our	their

### 7.3 this/that

We use *this* to refer to things near to us.



*This* is my son.

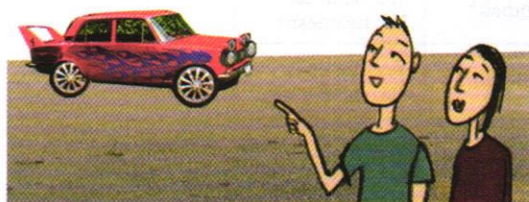


I like *this* sandwich.

We use *that* to refer to things that are not near to us.



*That's* my house.



I don't like *that* car.

## UNIT 8

### 8.1 There is/There are

**Positive**

*There's* a sofa in the living room.

(There's = There is)

*There are* two CD players in my house.

**Negative**

*There isn't* a TV.

*There aren't* any photos.

**Question**

*Is there* a TV in the kitchen?

*Are there* any magazines on the table?

*How many* CDs *are there*?

### 8.2 some and any

We use *some* in positive sentences.

*There are some* books.

We use *any* in questions and negatives.

*Does he have any* photographs?

*There aren't any* lamps.

See 12.2 p128 for information on *some* and *any*.



## UNIT 9

### 9.1 was/were

Was and were are the past tense of am/are/is.

#### Present

I	am	fine. in class.
He/She It	is	
You We They	are	

#### Past

I He/She It	was	fine.
You We They	were	at home.

#### Negative

I He	wasn't	at home last weekend. at school yesterday.
You They	weren't	

#### Questions

Where **were** you yesterday?

Was **she** at school? Yes, **she was**./No, **she wasn't**.

❗ We use was/were with born, not am/is/are.

Where **were** you **born**? NOT ~~Where are you born?~~  
He **was born** in Russia. ~~He is born in Russia.~~

### 9.2 Past Simple – irregular verbs

Many common verbs are irregular. See the list of irregular verbs on p142.

Present	→	Past
am/is/are		was/were
go		went
come		came
have		had
make		made
see		saw
buy		bought
say		said
find		found
do		did

## UNIT 10

### 10.1 Past Simple positive

1 Regular verbs add -ed or -d in the Past Simple.

Present	→	Past
play		played
watch		watched
listen		listened
turn		turned
change		changed

❗ Remember: Many common verbs are irregular.

go	→	went
see	→	saw
have	→	had

See the list of irregular verbs on p142.

2 The form is the same for all persons.

I You He/She/It We They	listened to the radio. went to work. had lunch.
-------------------------------------	---

### 10.2 Past Simple questions and negatives

❗ Present do/does → Past did  
What time **does** he usually get up?  
What time **did** he get up yesterday?

#### Questions with question words

Where	did	I you he/she/it we they	go?
-------	-----	-------------------------------------	-----

#### Negative

I You He/She/It We They	didn't	go shopping. see the film.
-------------------------------------	--------	-------------------------------

#### Yes/No questions and short answers

Did they play football?	Yes, they did.
Did you have a good time?	No, I didn't.



## UNIT 11

### 11.1 can

#### Positive

I		swim.
You	can	drive.
He/She/It		cook.
We		run fast.
They		

#### Negative

I		draw.
You	can't	speak German.
He/She/It		play golf.
We		
They		

#### Questions with question words

What		you do?
When	can	I go home?
How many languages		he speak?

#### Yes/No questions and short answers

Can you swim?	Yes, I can.
Can he play tennis?	No, he can't.

### 11.2 Modal verbs

Can is a modal verb. We don't use *do/does/don't/doesn't* with *can*.

I can't swim.	NOT	<del>I don't can swim.</del>
Can you cook?	NOT	<del>Do you can cook?</del>
She can't speak Spanish.	NOT	<del>She doesn't can ...</del>
They can't drive.	NOT	<del>They don't can ...</del>

### 11.3 Adverbs

1 Adverbs give more information about verbs.

go **fast** draw **well** speak **beautifully**

2 Notice the word order.

You **speak** English **well**. NOT ~~You speak well English.~~  
He **drives** his car **fast**. NOT ~~He drives fast his car.~~

3 Regular adverbs end in *-ly*.

Adjective	→	Adverb
fluent		fluently
beautiful		beautifully
slow		slowly
careful		carefully
usual		usually

4 Some adverbs are irregular.

Adjective	→	Adverb
good		well
fast		fast
late		late
early		early
hard		hard

## UNIT 12

### 12.1 would like

1 We use *would like* to ask for things.

#### Positive

I		
You		'd like a cup of tea.
He/She		
We		
They		

2 We use *Would ... like?* to offer things.

#### Question

Would	you he/she they	like some cake?
-------	-----------------------	-----------------

3 Look at the answers.

Would you like a cup of tea? Yes, please.  
No, thank you.

We use *would like*, not *want*, to be polite.  
I'd like a coffee, please. NOT ~~I want a coffee.~~

4 We can use *would like* with another verb.

Would you like **to go out** tonight?  
What would you like **to do**?

### 12.2 some and any

1 We use *some* in positive sentences.

I'd like		chicken.
There's	some	cheese.
We have		books.

2 We use *any* in questions.

Is there		chicken?
Do you have	any	money?
Are there		people?

3 We use *any* in negatives.

There isn't		bread.
We don't have	any	friends.
There aren't		books.

4 We use *some* when we offer things or ask for things.

Would you like		water?
Can I have	some	cheese?

### 12.3 like and would like

1 We use *like* and *like doing* to talk about things we always like.

I **like** coffee. (= I always enjoy coffee.)  
She **likes** swimming in summer.  
What do you **like** doing at the weekend?

2 We use *would like* to talk about things we want now or soon.

I'd **like** a cup of tea. (= I want a cup of tea now or soon.)  
She's hot. She'd **like** to go swimming.  
What **would** you **like** to do tonight?



## UNIT 13

### 13.1 Present Continuous

#### Positive

I	am	working.
He She It	is	
You We They	are	

#### Negative

I	'm not	working.
He She It	isn't	
You We They	aren't	

#### Questions with question words

What	am I	wearing?
	are you are we are they	
	is he is she	

#### Yes/No questions and short answers

Are you wearing jeans?	Yes, I am. No, I'm not.
Is she reading a newspaper?	Yes, she is. No, she isn't.

### 13.2 Present Simple and Present Continuous

- We use the Present Simple to talk about actions that are true for all time or a long time.

*Hans comes from Germany.*

*I love my family.*

*My father works in a bank.*

*I get up at 7.30 every day.*

*She doesn't understand French.*

- We use the Present Continuous to talk about actions that last a short time. The actions are happening now.

*I usually wear jeans, but today I'm wearing a suit.*

*He's speaking French to that man. He speaks French very well.*

*It's raining.*

*They're swimming.*

## UNIT 14

### 14.1 Future plans

#### Positive

I'm You're He's She's We're They're	going to Europe. leaving next week. flying on Sunday.
--	---

I'm You're He's She's We're They're	going to	see Buckingham Palace. have a tour of the city. stay in the Ritz hotel.
--	----------	---

#### Questions

Where When Where Who	are you	going on holiday? leaving? staying? going with?
-------------------------------	---------	--

Where What	are you going to	stay? do?
---------------	------------------	--------------



# Word list

Here is a list of most of the new words in the units of *New Headway Plus Beginner Student's Book*.

*adj* = adjective  
*adv* = adverb  
*conj* = conjunction

*n* = noun  
*pl* = plural  
*prep* = preposition

*pron* = pronoun  
*v* = verb  
*infml* = informal



## UNIT 1

and *conj* /ænd/, /ənd/  
bag *n* /bæg/  
book *n* /bʊk/  
burger *n* /'bɜːgə(r)/  
bus *n* /bʌs/  
Bye! /baɪ/  
camera *n* /'kæmrə/  
car *n* /kɑː(r)/  
coffee *n* /'kɒfi/  
computer *n* /kəm'pjʊ:tə(r)/  
cup *n* /kʌp/  
day *n* /deɪ/  
English *adj*, *n* /'ɪŋɡlɪʃ/  
everyday *adj* /'evrɪdeɪ/  
fine *adj* /faɪn/  
first name *n* /'fɜːst ,neɪm/  
Good afternoon! /gʊd ,ɑːftə'nuːn/  
Good morning! /gʊd 'mɔːnɪŋ/  
Good night! /gʊd 'naɪt/  
Goodbye! /gʊd'baɪ/  
Have a nice day! /,hæv ə naɪs 'deɪ/  
hello *n* /hel'əʊ/  
house *n* /haʊs/  
How are you? /,haʊ ə 'juː/  
lovely *adj* /'lʌvli/  
my /maɪ/  
name *n* /neɪm/  
Nice to meet you. /,naɪs tə 'mi:t ju/  
OK *adj* /,əʊ 'keɪ/  
phone *n* /fəʊn/  
photograph *n* /'fəʊtəgrɑːf/  
please /pliːz/  
sandwich *n* /'sænwɪtʃ/  
See you later! /,siː ju 'leɪtə(r)/  
Sleep well! /'sliːp ,wel/  
surname *n* /'sɜːneɪm/  
tea *n* /tiː/  
television *n* /'telɪvɪʒn/  
thank you /θæŋkjuː/  
thanks /θæŋks/  
this *pron* /'ðɪs/  
today *n* /tə'deɪ/  
very well /,veri 'wel/  
what? /,wɒt/  
with *prep* /wɪð/  
your /jɔː(r)/  
**Numbers 1-10**  
one /wʌn/  
two /tuː/  
three /θriː/

four /fɔː(r)/  
five /faɪv/  
six /sɪks/  
seven /'sevn/  
eight /eɪt/  
nine /naɪn/  
ten /ten/



## UNIT 2

about *prep* /ə'baʊt/  
awful *adj* /'ɔːfl/  
beautiful *adj* /'bjʊ:tɪfl/  
building *n* /'bɪldɪŋ/  
centre *adj* /'sentə(r)/  
cities *n pl* /'sɪtɪz/  
countries *n pl* /'kʌntrɪz/  
doctor *n* /'dɒktə(r)/  
fantastic *adj* /fæn'tæstɪk/  
find *v* /faɪnd/  
from *prep* /frɒm/  
hear *v* /hɪə(r)/  
her /hɜː(r)/  
his /hɪz/  
hospital *n* /'hɒspɪtl/  
how old? /haʊ 'əʊld/  
look at (sth) *v* /'lʊk ət/  
map *n* /mæp/  
married *adj* /'mæɪrɪd/  
on holiday /ɒn 'hɒlədeɪ/  
people *n pl* /'piːpl/  
really good *adj* /,riːəli 'gʊd/  
school *n* /skuːl/  
these *pron* /ðiːz/  
too *adv* /tuː/  
weather *n* /'weðə(r)/  
where? *adv* /weə(r)/  
world *n* /wɜːld/

### Countries

Australia *n* /ə'streɪliə/  
Brazil *n* /brə'zɪl/  
Canada *n* /'kænədə/  
China *n* /'tʃaɪnə/  
Egypt *n* /'iːdʒɪpt/  
England *n* /'ɪŋɡlənd/  
France *n* /frɑːns/  
Hungary *n* /'hʌŋɡəri/  
Italy *n* /'ɪtəli/  
Japan *n* /dʒə'pæn/  
Russia *n* /'rʌʃə/  
Spain *n* /speɪn/  
Saudi Arabia *n* /,saʊdiː ə'reɪbiːə/



**Numbers 11–30**

eleven /i'levn/  
 twelve /twelv/  
 thirteen /θɜ:'ti:n/  
 fourteen /fɔ:'ti:n/  
 fifteen /fif'ti:n/  
 sixteen /siks'ti:n/  
 seventeen /sevn'ti:n/  
 eighteen /er'ti:n/  
 nineteen /nam'ti:n/  
 twenty /'twenti/  
 twenty-one /,twenti'wʌn/  
 twenty-two /,twenti'tu:/  
 twenty-three /,twenti'θri:/  
 twenty-four /,twenti'fɔ:(r)/  
 twenty-five /,twenti'faɪv/  
 twenty-six /,twenti'siks/  
 twenty-seven /,twenti'sevn/  
 twenty-eight /,twenti'eɪt/  
 twenty-nine /,twenti'naɪn/  
 thirty /'θɜ:ti/

**UNIT 3**

address *n* /ə'dres/  
 all *adv* /ɔ:l/  
 America *n* /ə'merɪkə/  
 another *pron* /ə'nʌðə(r)/  
 boy *n* /bɔɪ/  
 brother *n* /'brʌðə/  
 builder *n* /'bɪldə(r)/  
 bus driver *n* /'bʌs ,draɪvə(r)/  
 businessman *n* /'bɪznəsmæn/  
 charity walk *n* /'tʃærɪti ,wɔ:k/  
 excited *adj* /ɪk'saɪtɪd/  
 excuse me /ɪk'skju:z ,mi:/  
 forty /'fɔ:ti/  
 good luck /gʊd 'lʌk/  
 Great! *adv* /greɪt/  
 happy *adj* /'hæpi/  
 here *adv* /hɪə(r)/  
 Hi /haɪ/  
 I don't understand  
 /aɪ ,dəʊnt ʌndə'stænd/  
 I'm sorry /aɪm 'sɒri/  
 interesting *adv* /'ɪntrəstɪŋ/  
 interview *n* /'ɪntəvjʊ:/  
 Ireland *n* /'aɪələnd/  
 job *n* /dʒɒb/  
 live *v* /lɪv/  
 magazine *n* /,mæɡə'zi:n/  
 now *adv* /naʊ/  
 nurse *n* /nɜ:s/  
 other *adj* /'ʌðə(r)/  
 over there /,əʊvə 'ðeə/  
 personal information *n*  
 /,pɜ:sənl ɪnfə'meɪʃn/

phone number *n* /'fəʊn ,nʌmbə(r)/  
 police officer *n* /pə'li:s ,ɒfɪsə(r)/  
 same *adj* /seɪm/  
 Scotland *n* /'skɒtlənd/  
 shop assistant *n* /'ʃɒp ə,sɪstənt/  
 sorry /'sɒri/  
 station *n* /'steɪʃn/  
 Sweden *n* /'swɪ:dn/  
 thanks a lot /,θæŋks ə 'lɒt/  
 tired *n* /'taɪəd/  
 town centre *n* /,taʊn 'sentə(r)/  
 very *adj* /'veri/  
 well *n* /wel/  
 winner *n* /'wɪnə(r)/  
 yet *adv* /jet/

**UNIT 4**

a lot of /ə 'lɒt əv/  
 accountant *n* /ə'kaʊntənt/  
 age *n* /eɪdʒ/  
 bank manager *n* /'bæŋk ,mænɪdʒə(r)/  
 bank *n* /bæŋk/  
 best friend *n* /,best 'frend/  
 big *adj* /bɪɡ/  
 both *pron* /bəʊθ/  
 business card *n* /'bɪznɪs ,kɑ:d/  
 certainly *adv* /'sɜ:tənli/  
 children *n pl* /'tʃɪldrən/  
 college *n* /'kɒlɪdʒ/  
 Come on! /,kʌm 'ɒn/  
 company *n* /'kʌmpəni/  
 connecting *v* /kə'nektɪŋ/  
 dictionary *n* /'dɪkʃənri/  
 evening *n* /'i:vnɪŋ/  
 everybody *pron* /'evrɪbɒdi/  
 family tree *n* /,fæməli 'tri:/  
 fans *n pl* /'fænz/  
 football *n* /'fʊtbɔ:l/  
 friends *n pl* /frendz/  
 funny *adj* /'fʌni/  
 Germany *n* /'dʒɜ:məni/  
 give *v* /ɡɪv/  
 goal *n* /ɡəʊl/  
 good *adj* /ɡʊd/  
 have *v* /hæv/  
 home *n* /həʊm/  
 hotel *n* /həʊ'tel/  
 like *v* /laɪk/  
 manager *n* /'mænɪdʒə(r)/  
 near *adj* /nɪə(r)/  
 new *adj* /nju:/  
 nice *adj* /naɪs/  
 north *adj* /nɔ:θ/  
 notice *v* /'nəʊtɪs/  
 of course /əv 'kɔ:s/



office *n* /'ɒfɪs/  
 our /aʊə(r)/  
 part of (something) *n* /'pɑ:t əv/  
 part-time *adj* /,pɑ:t 'taɪm/  
 police *n* /pə'li:s/  
 really *adj* /'ri:əli/  
 small *adj* /smɔ:l/  
 spell *v* /spel/  
 sport *n* /spɔ:t/  
 sports centre *n* /'spɔ:ts ,sentə(r)/  
 their /ðeə(r)/  
 together *adv* /tə'geðə(r)/  
 university *n* /,ju:nɪ'vɜ:səti/  
 us *pron* /ʌs/  
 village *n* /'vɪlɪdʒ/  
 want *v* /wɒnt/

### The family

brother *n* /'brʌðə(r)/  
 daughter *n* /'dɔ:tə(r)/  
 father *n* /'fɑ:ðə(r)/  
 husband *n* /'hʌzbənd/  
 mother *n* /'mʌðə(r)/  
 parents *n pl* /'peərənts/  
 sister *n* /'sɪstə(r)/  
 son *n* /sʌn/  
 wife *n* /waɪf/



## UNIT 5

Arabic *n* /'æɹəbɪk/  
 blue *adj* /blu:/  
 cheese *n* /tʃi:z/  
 chocolate *n* /'tʃɒklət/  
 Coke *n* /kəʊk/  
 Come here! /,kʌm 'hɪə(r)/  
 count *v* /kaʊnt/  
 delicious *adj* /dɪ'lɪʃəs/  
 drama *n* /'drɑ:mə/  
 drink *v* /drɪŋk/  
 eat *v* /i:t/  
 exciting *adj* /ɪk'saɪtɪŋ/  
 flat *n* /flæt/  
 food *n* /fu:d/  
 guys *n pl* /gaɪz/  
 how much? /,haʊ 'mʌtʃ/  
 ice-cream *n* /'aɪskri:m/  
 identity *n* /aɪ'dentɪti/  
 languages *n pl* /'læŋgwɪdʒɪz/  
 list *n* /lɪst/  
 love *v* /lʌv/  
 Mexico *n* /'meksɪkəʊ/  
 millionaire *n* /,mɪljə'neə(r)/  
 nationalities *n pl* /,næʃə'nælətɪz/  
 orange *n* /'ɒrɪndʒ/  
 order *v* /'ɔ:də(r)/

pair (of) *n* /peə(r) (əv)/  
 pizza *n* /'pi:tʃə/  
 play *v* /pleɪ/  
 Portugal *n* /'pɔ:tʃʊɡl/  
 pounds *n pl* /paʊndz/  
 prices *n pl* /'praɪsɪz/  
 restaurants *n pl* /'restrɒnts/  
 skiing *n* /'ski:ɪŋ/  
 sometimes *adv* /'sʌmtaɪmz/  
 speak *v* /spi:k/  
 swimming *n* /'swɪmɪŋ/  
 Switzerland *n* /'swɪtsələnd/  
 tennis *n* /'tenɪs/  
 terrible *adj* /'terəbl/  
 the best *adj* /ðə 'best/  
 twin *n* /twɪn/  
 waiter *n* /'weɪtə(r)/

### Nationalities

American /ə'merɪkən/  
 Brazilian /brə'zɪliən/  
 Chinese /tʃaɪ'ni:z/  
 French /frentʃ/  
 German /'dʒɜ:mən/  
 Italian /ɪ'tæliən/  
 Japanese /,dʒæpə'ni:z/  
 Mexican /'meksɪkən/  
 Portuguese /,pɔ:tʃu'gi:z/  
 Saudi Arabian /,saʊdi: ə'reɪbi:ən/  
 Spanish /'spæɪnɪʃ/  
 Syrian /'sɪri:ən/  
 Turkish /'tɜ:kɪʃ/

### Numbers 40–100

forty /'fɔ:ti/  
 fifty /'fɪfti/  
 sixty /'sɪksti/  
 seventy /'sevənti/  
 eighty /'eɪti/  
 ninety /'naɪnti/  
 one hundred /wʌn 'hʌndrəd/



## UNIT 6

all day *adj* /,ɔ:l 'deɪ/  
 always *adv* /'ɔ:lweɪz/  
 artist *n* /'ɑ:tɪst/  
 as usual /əz 'ju:ʒuəl/  
 at the weekend /ət ðə ,wi:k'end/  
 aunt *n* /ɑ:nt/  
 beach *n* /bi:tʃ/  
 bed *n* /bed/  
 between *adv* /brɪ'twi:n/  
 breakfast *n* /'brekfəst/  
 businesswoman *n* /'bɪznɪswʊmən/  
 busy *adj* /'bɪzi/  
 buy *v* /baɪ/  
 come *v* /kʌm/  
 cook *v* /kʊk/  
 dad *n* /dæd/



dinner *n* /'dɪnə(r)/  
 director *n* /dɪ'rektə(r)/  
 drive *v* /draɪv/  
 early *adv* /'ɜ:li/  
 eggs *n pl* /egz/  
 fill *v* /fɪl/  
 get home /,get 'həʊm/  
 get up /,get 'ʌp/  
 go out /,gəʊ 'aʊt/  
 go shopping /,gəʊ 'ʃɒpɪŋ/  
 go to bed /,gəʊ tə 'bed/  
 Good idea! /,ɡʊd aɪ'dɪə/  
 have a shower /,hæv ə 'ʃaʊə(r)/  
 in *prep* /ɪn/  
 Internet *n* /'ɪntənət/  
 invite *v* /ɪn'vaɪt/  
 leave *v* /li:v/  
 lesson *n* /'lesn/  
 life *n* /laɪf/  
 lifestyle *n* /'laɪfstɑɪl/  
 lunch *n* /lʌntʃ/  
 morning *n* /'mɔ:ɪnɪŋ/  
 never *adv* /'nevə(r)/  
 next *adj* /nekst/  
 o'clock *adv* /ə'klɒk/  
 often *adv* /'ɒfn, 'ɒftən/  
 paint *v* /peɪnt/  
 questionnaire *n* /,kwɛstʃə'neə(r)/  
 relax *v* /rɪ'læks/  
 schooldays *n pl* /'sku:ldeɪz/  
 sea *n* /si:/  
 seaside *n* /'si:sɑɪd/  
 shopping *n* /'ʃɒpɪŋ/  
 shower *v, n* /'ʃaʊə(r)/  
 (web)site *n* /('web)sɑɪt/  
 soon *adv* /su:n/  
 stay *v* /steɪ/  
 stop *v* /stɒp/  
 studio *n* /'stju:diəʊ/  
 taxi *n* /'tæksi/  
 time *n* /taɪm/  
 toast *n* /təʊst/  
 tomorrow *adv* /tə'mɒrəʊ/  
 TV *n* /,ti: 'vi:/  
 typical *adj* /'tɪpɪkəl/  
 (the) US *n pl* /ju: 'es/  
 usually *adv* /'ju:ʒuəli/  
 visit *n* /'vɪzɪt/  
 walk *n / v* /wɔ:k/  
 watch *v* /wɒtʃ/  
 week *n* /wi:k/  
 when? /wen/

#### Days of the week

Monday *n* /'mʌndeɪ/  
 Tuesday *n* /'tju:zdeɪ/  
 Wednesday *n* /'wednzdeɪ/  
 Thursday *n* /'θɜ:zdeɪ/

Friday *n* /'fraɪdeɪ/  
 Saturday *n* /'sætədeɪ/  
 Sunday *n* /'saʊndeɪ/



## UNIT 7

adore *v* /ə'dɔ:(r)/  
 amazing *adj* /ə'meɪzɪŋ/  
 anything *pron* /'eniθɪŋ/  
 aspirin *n* /'æsprɪn/  
 baby *n* /'beɪbi/  
 because *prep* /brɪ'kɔ:z/  
 bedrooms *n pl* /'bedru:mz/  
 best *adj* /best/  
 black *n* /blæk/  
 boss *n* /bɒs/  
 café *n* /'kæfeɪ/  
 card *n* /kɑ:d/  
 carrots *n pl* /'kærəts/  
 catch *v* /kætʃ/  
 cat *n* /kæt/  
 changing rooms *n pl*  
 /'tʃeɪndʒɪŋ ru:mz/  
 cheap *adj* /tʃi:p/  
 chemist's *n* /'kemɪsts/  
 Chile *n* /'tʃɪli/  
 chips *n pl* /tʃɪps/  
 clothes *n pl* /kləʊðz/  
 coat *n* /kəʊt/  
 cold *adj* /kəʊld/  
 comfortable *adj* /'kʌmfətbəl/  
 composer *n* /kəm'pəʊzə(r)/  
 credit card *n* /'kredit kɑ:d/  
 Czech Republic *n* /,tʃek rɪ'pʌblɪk/  
 degrees *n pl* /dɪ'ɡri:z/  
 door *n* /dɔ:(r)/  
 easy *adj* /'i:zi/  
 every /'evri/  
 expensive *adj* /ɪk'spensɪv/  
 fast *adj* /fɑ:st/  
 favourite *adj* /'feɪvərɪt/  
 fog *n* /fɒɡ/  
 free time *n* /,fri: 'taɪm/  
 Frenchman *n* /'frentʃmən/  
 friendly *adj* /'frendli/  
 hat *n* /hæt/  
 hate *v* /heɪt/  
 homework *n* /'həʊmwɜ:k/  
 hot *adj* /hɒt/  
 how many? /,haʊ 'meni/  
 international *adj* /,ɪntə'næʃnəl/  
 jacket *n* /'dʒækɪt/  
 jumper *n* /'dʒʌmpə(r)/  
 kids *n pl* /kɪdz/  
 large *adj* /lɑ:dʒ/  
 learn *v* /lɜ:n/  
 look *v* /lʊk/  
 machine *n* /mə'ʃi:n/



meet *v* /mi:t/  
 mobile phones *n pl* /məʊbaɪl 'fəʊnz/  
 money *n* /'mʌni/  
 months *n pl* /mʌnθs/  
 neighbours *n pl* /'neɪbəz/  
 newspaper *n* /'nju:zpeɪpə(r)/  
 no problem /'nəʊ ,prɒbləm/  
 October *n* /ɒk'təʊbə(r)/  
 old *adj* /əʊld/  
 over there /,əʊvə 'ðeə(r)/  
 packet *n* /'pækɪt/  
 parcel *n* /'pɑ:sl/  
 Pardon? /'pɑ:dn/  
 PIN *n* /'pɪn/  
 place *n* /pleɪs/  
 post *v* /pəʊst/  
 Post Office *n* /'pəʊst ,ɒfɪs/  
 postcard *n* /'pəʊstkɑ:d/  
 present *n* /'preznt/  
 programme *n* /'prəʊgræm/  
 railway station *n* /'reɪlweɪ ,steɪʃn/  
 rain *n* /reɪn/  
 red *adj* /red/  
 return ticket *n* /rɪ'tʌ:n ,tɪkɪt/  
 sad *adj* /sæd/  
 salad *n* /'sæləd/  
 scales *n pl* /skeɪlz/  
 seafood *n* /'si:fu:d/  
 shampoo *n* /ʃæm'pu:/  
 shoes *n pl* /ʃu:z/  
 shops *n pl* /ʃɒps/  
 shows *n pl* /ʃəʊz/  
 single ticket *n* /'sɪŋgl ,tɪkɪt/  
 stamp *n* /stæmp/  
 Swedish *adj* /'swɪ:dl/  
 take away *n* /'teɪkəweɪ/  
 teach *v* /ti:tʃ/  
 that *pron* /ðæt/  
 toothpaste *n* /'tu:θpeɪst/  
 town *n* /taʊn/  
 train *n* /treɪn/  
 try on *v* /traɪ ɒn/  
 T-shirt *n* /'ti:ʃɜ:t/  
 understand *v* /,ʌndə'stænd/  
 very much /,veri 'mʌtʃ/  
 violinist *n* /,vaɪə'lɪnɪst/  
 website *n* /'websaɪt/  
 wet *adj* /wet/  
 white *adj* /waɪt/  
 who? /hu:/  
 why? /waɪ/  
 wonderful *adj* /'wʌndəfl/  
 wrong *adj* /rɒŋ/  
 yellow *adj* /'jeləʊ/



## UNIT 8

alarm clock *n* /ə'la:m ,klɒk/  
 any *pron* /'eni/  
 armchair *n* /'ɑ:mtʃeə(r)/  
 autumn *n* /'ɔ:təm/  
 bathroom *n* /'bɑ:θru:m/  
 border *n* /'bɔ:də(r)/  
 bus station *n* /'bʌs ,steɪʃn/  
 car keys *n pl* /'ka: ,ki:z/  
 car park *n* /'ka: ,pɑ:k/  
 castle *n* /'kɑ:sl/  
 cinema *n* /'sɪnəmə/  
 cooker *n* /'kʊkə(r)/  
 cosmopolitan *adj* /,kɒzmə'pɒlɪtən/  
 cycling *n* /'saɪklɪŋ/  
 desk *n* /desk/  
 dining room *n* /'daɪnɪŋ ,ru:m/  
 directions *n* /dɪ'rekʃnz/  
 drawer *n* /d্রো:(r)/  
 DVD player *n* /,di: vi: 'di: ,pleɪə(r)/  
 excellent *adj* /'eksələnt/  
 ferry *n* /'feri/  
 festivals *n pl* /'festɪvlz/  
 fishing *n* /'fɪʃɪŋ/  
 floor *n* /flo:(r)/  
 fresh *adj* /fref/  
 fridge *n* /frɪdʒ/  
 furniture *n* /'fɜ:nɪʃə(r)/  
 games *n pl* /geɪmz/  
 golf *n* /gɒlf/  
 home town *n* /,həʊm 'taʊn/  
 Indian *adj* /'ɪndiən/  
 Internet café *n* /'ɪntənət ,kæfeɪ/  
 kinds of /'kaɪndz əv/  
 kitchen *n* /'kɪtʃn/  
 lamp *n* /læmp/  
 laptop *n* /'læptɒp/  
 left /'left/  
 living room *n* /'lɪvɪŋ ,ru:m/  
 mean *adj* /mi:n/  
 meetings *n pl* /'mi:tiŋz/  
 miles *n pl* /maɪlz/  
 minutes *n pl* /'mɪnɪts/  
 modern *adj* /'mɒdn/  
 more *pron* /mɔ:(r)/  
 mountain *n* /'maʊntən/  
 need *v* /ni:d/  
 next to *prep* /'nekst tu:, tə/  
 night *n* /naɪt/  
 park *n* /pɑ:k/  
 posters *n pl* /'pəʊstəz/  
 quick *adj* /kwɪk/  
 right *adj* /raɪt/  
 rooms *n pl* /ru:mz/  
 run *v* /rʌn/  
 sailing *n* /seɪlɪŋ/



signs *n pl* /sɑːnz/  
 sky *n* /skaɪ/  
 slow *adj* /sləʊ/  
 snowboarding *n* /ˈsnəʊbɔːdɪŋ/  
 sofa *n* /ˈsəʊfə/  
 some /səm/  
 spectacular *adj* /spekˈtækjələ(r)/  
 sports bag *n* /ˈspɔːts ˌbæg/  
 spring *n* /sprɪŋ/  
 straight on /ˌstreɪt ˈɒn/  
 summer *n* /ˈsʌmə(r)/  
 sunny *adj* /ˈsʌni/  
 supermarket *n* /ˈsuːpəməːkɪt/  
 telephone *n* /ˈtelɪfəʊn/  
 Thai *adj* /taɪ/  
 theatre *n* /ˈθiətə(r)/  
 tidy *adj* /ˈtaɪdi/  
 toilet *n* /ˈtɔɪlət/  
 trainers *n pl* /ˈtreɪnəz/  
 travel *v* /ˈtrævl/  
 trolley bus *n* /ˈtrɒli ˌbʌs/  
 turn *v* /tɜːn/  
 under *prep* /ˈʌndə(r)/  
 walls *n pl* /wɔːlz/  
 warm *adj* /wɔːm/  
 water sports *n* /ˈwɔːtə ˌspɔːts/  
 winter *n* /ˈwɪntə(r)/



## UNIT 9

art *n* /ɑːt/  
 Austria *n* /ˈɒstriə/  
 back *n* /bæk/  
 birthday *n* /ˈbɜːθdeɪ/  
 born *v* /bɔːn/  
 Canadian *adj* /kəˈneɪdiən/  
 charity shop *n* /ˈtʃærəti ˌʃɒp/  
 colourful *adj* /ˈkʌləfəl/  
 dear *adj* /dɪə(r)/  
 do *v* /duː/  
 eldest *adj* /ˈeldɪst/  
 expert *n* /ˈekspɜːt/  
 famous *adj* /ˈfeɪməs/  
 film *n* /fɪlm/  
 film company *n* /ˈfɪlm ˌkʌmpəni/  
 fingerprint *n* /ˈfɪŋɡəprɪnt/  
 for sale /fəˈseɪl/  
 gallery *n* /ˌɡæləri/  
 go *v* /ɡəʊ/  
 good time /ˌɡʊd ˈtaɪm/  
 grandfather *n* /ˈɡrændfɑːðə(r)/  
 grandmother *n* /ˈɡrændmʌðə(r)/  
 gym *n* /dʒɪm/  
 happy birthday /ˌhæpi ˈbɜːθdeɪ/  
 horrible *adj* /ˈhɒrəbl/  
 housework *n* /ˈhaʊswɜːk/  
 Irish *adj* /ˈaɪrɪʃ/

last year /ˌlɑːst ˈjiə(r)/  
 make *v* /meɪk/  
 mess *n* /mes/  
 most /məʊst/  
 musician *n* /ˈmjuːʒɪn/  
 next year /ˌnekst ˈjiə(r)/  
 older *adj* /ˈəʊldə(r)/  
 Pakistan *n* /ˌpækiˈstæn/  
 pay *v* /peɪ/  
 politician *n* /ˌpɒləˈtɪʃn/  
 princess *n* /ˌprɪnˈses/  
 racing driver *n* /ˈreɪsɪŋ ˌdraɪvə(r)/  
 real *adj* /ˈriːəl/  
 rich *adj* /rɪtʃ/  
 Saudi Arabia *n* /ˌsaudi əˈreɪbiə/  
 scientist *n* /ˈsaɪəntɪst/  
 see *v* /siː/  
 singer *n* /ˈsɪŋə(r)/  
 south *adj* /saʊθ/  
 still *adj* /stɪl/  
 story *n* /ˈstɔːri/  
 thousand *n* /ˈθaʊzənd/  
 TV company *n* /ˌtiː ˈviː ˌkʌmpəni/  
 uncle *n* /ˈʌŋkl/  
 writer *n* /ˈraɪtə(r)/  
 year *n* /jiə(r)/  
 yesterday *adv* /ˈjestədeɪ/

### Months of the year

January *n* /dʒænjuəri/  
 February *n* /ˈfebruəri/  
 March *n* /mɑːtʃ/  
 April *n* /ˈeɪprəl/  
 May *n* /meɪ/  
 June *n* /dʒuːn/  
 July *n* /dʒuːlaɪ/  
 August *n* /ˈɔːɡəst/  
 September *n* /sepˈtembə(r)/  
 October *n* /ɒkˈtəʊbə(r)/  
 November *n* /nəʊˈvembə(r)/  
 December *n* /dɪˈsembə(r)/

### Ordinal numbers

first *adj* /fɜːst/  
 second *adj* /ˈsekənd/  
 third *adj* /θɜːd/  
 fourth *adj* /fɔːθ/  
 fifth *adj* /fɪfθ/  
 sixth *adj* /sɪksθ/  
 seventh *adj* /ˈsevnθ/  
 eighth *adj* /eɪtθ/  
 ninth *adj* /naɪnθ/  
 tenth *adj* /tenθ/  
 eleventh *adj* /ˈlevənθ/  
 twelfth *adj* /twelfθ/  
 thirteenth *adj* /θɜːˈtiːnθ/  
 fourteenth *adj* /fɔːˈtiːnθ/  
 fifteenth *adj* /fɪfˈtiːnθ/  
 sixteenth *adj* /sɪksˈtiːnθ/  
 seventeenth *adj* /ˌsevnˈtiːnθ/



eighteenth *adj* /eɪ'ti:nθ/  
 nineteenth *adj* /naɪn'ti:nθ/  
 twentieth *adj* /'twentiəθ/  
 thirtieth *adj* /'θɜ:tɪəθ/



## UNIT 10

ago *adv* /ə'gəʊ/  
 at *prep* /æt, ət/  
 bus tour *n* /'bʌs ,tuə(r)/  
 camping *n* /'kæmpɪŋ/  
 castle *n* /'kɑ:sl/  
 clean *v* /kli:nd/  
 coffee bar *n* /'kɒfi ,bɑ:(r)/  
 date *n* /deɪt/  
 diner *n* /'daɪnə(r)/  
 enjoy *v* /ɪn'dʒɔɪ/  
 free *adj* /fri:/  
 get *v* /get/  
 horse riding *n* /'hɔ:s ,raɪdɪŋ/  
 ice-skating *n* /'aɪs ,sketɪŋ/  
 India *n* /'ɪndiə/  
 interested *n* /'ɪntrəstɪd/  
 lake *n* /leɪk/  
 last *adj* /lɑ:st/  
 late *adj* / *adv* /leɪt/  
 leisure activity *n* /'leɪʒə(r) æk,tɪvəti/  
 listened *v* /'lɪsnd/  
 lots *pron* /lɒts/  
 lucky *adj* /'lʌki/  
 market *n* /'mɑ:kɪt/  
 meal *n* /mi:l/  
 milk *n* /mɪlk/  
 much *pron* /mʌtʃ/  
 museum *n* /mju:'zi:əm/  
 once *adv* /wʌns/  
 orange juice *n* /'ɒrɪndʒ ,dʒu:s/  
 pasta *n* /'pæstə/  
 Really? /'ri:əli/  
 relaxing *adj* /rɪ'læksɪŋ/  
 roast beef *n* /rəʊst 'bi:f/  
 rugby *n* /'rʌɡbi/  
 show *v* /ʃəʊ/  
 sightseeing *n* /'saɪtsi:ɪŋ/  
 sit *v* /sɪt/  
 skiing *n* /ski:ɪŋ/  
 special *adj* /'speʃl/  
 square *n* /skweə(r)/  
 start *v* /stɑ:t/  
 sun *n* /sʌn/  
 swimming pool *n* /'swɪmɪŋ ,pu:l/  
 tour *n* /tuə(r)/  
 tourist *n* /'tuərɪst/  
 tourist office *n* /'tuərɪst ,ɒfɪs/  
 villa *n* /'vɪlə/  
 walk *v* /'wɔ:k/

weekend *n* /wi:k'end/  
 windsurfing *n* /'wɪndzɜ:fɪŋ/  
 zoo *n* /zu:/



## UNIT 11

a little bit /ə 'lɪtl ,bɪt/  
 accident *n* /'æksɪdənt/  
 act *v* /ækt/  
 afraid *adj* /ə'freɪd/  
 airport *n* /'eəpɔ:t/  
 also *adv* /'ɔ:lsəʊ/  
 anywhere *adv* /'eniweə(r)/  
 architect *n* /'ɑ:kɪtekt/  
 Argentina *n* /,ɑ:dʒən'ti:nə/  
 arm *n* /ɑ:m/  
 athlete *n* /'æθli:t/  
 barbecue *n* /'bɑ:bɪkju:/  
 beef *n* /bi:f/  
 better *adj* /'betə(r)/  
 bill *n* /bɪl/  
 blog *n* /blɒɡ/  
 boring *adj* /'bɔ:ɪŋ/  
 button *n* /'bʌtn/  
 cake *n* /keɪk/  
 can *v* /kæn/  
 chat *v* /tʃæt/  
 chess *n* /tʃes/  
 communicate *v* /kə'mju:nikeɪt/  
 computer games *n pl* /kəm'pjʊ:tə ,ɡeɪmz/  
 continue *v* /kən'tɪnju:/  
 dangerous *adj* /'deɪndʒərəs/  
 defense *n* /drɪ'fens/  
 department *n* /drɪ'pɑ:tmənt/  
 draw *v* /drɔ:/  
 endless *adj* /'endləs/  
 everything *pron* /'evriθɪŋ/  
 farmer *n* /'fɑ:mə(r)/  
 film star *n* /'fɪlm ,stɑ:(r)/  
 fluently *adj* /'flu:əntli/  
 fly *v* /flaɪ/  
 football player *n* /'fʊtbɔ:l ,pleɪə/  
 geography *n* /dʒi'ɒɡrəfi/  
 glass *n* /ɡlɑ:s/  
 grandma *n* /'grænma:/  
 green *adj* /ɡri:n/  
 help *v* /help/  
 history *n* /'hɪstri/  
 horse *n* /hɔ:s/  
 hour *n* /'aʊə(r)/  
 hurt *v* /hɜ:t/  
 interpreter *n* /ɪn'tɜ:prɪtə(r)/  
 jumbo jet *n* /,dʒʌmbəʊ 'dʒet/  
 kind *adj* /kaɪnd/  
 lift *v* /lɪft/  
 lost *adj* /lɒst/



message *n* /'mesɪdʒ/  
 metres *n pl* /'mi:təz/  
 millions *n pl* /'mɪljənz/  
 miss *v* /mɪs/  
 mostly *adv* /'məʊstli/  
 motor racing *n* /'məʊtə ,reɪsɪŋ/  
 network *n* /'netwɜ:k/  
 news *n* /nju:z/  
 offer *v* /'ɒfə(r)/  
 passport *n* /'pɑ:spɔ:t/  
 pilot *n* /'paɪlət/  
 planes *n pl* /pleɪnz/  
 possible *adj* /'pɒsəbl/  
 problem *n* /'prɒbləm/  
 push *v* /puʃ/  
 radio *n* /'reɪdiəʊ/  
 really well /,ri:əli 'wel/  
 request *v* /rɪ'kwest/  
 ride *v* /raɪd/  
 safe *adj* /seɪf/  
 science *n* /'saɪəns/  
 scientist *n* /'saɪəntɪst/  
 send *v* /send/  
 share *v* /ʃeə(r)/  
 slowly *adj* /'sləʊli/  
 something *pron* /'sʌmθɪŋ/  
 swim *v* /swɪm/  
 tall *adj* /tɔ:l/  
 the Net *n* /ðə 'net/  
 ticket *n* /'tɪkɪt/  
 ticket machine *n* /'tɪkɪt mə'ʃi:n/  
 tractor *n* /'træktə(r)/  
 try *v* /traɪ/  
 turn off *v* /,tɜ:n 'ɒf/  
 use *v* /ju:z/  
 water *n* /'wɔ:tə(r)/  
 What's the matter? /,wɒts ðə 'mætə(r)/  
 worldwide *adj* /'wɜ:ldwaɪd/  
 young *adj* /jʌŋ/



## UNIT 12

anyone *pron* /'eniwʌn/  
 Anything else? /,eniθɪŋ 'els/  
 apple pie *n* /,æpl 'paɪ/  
 around /ə'raʊnd/  
 bar *n* /bɑ:/  
 beans *n pl* /bi:nz/  
 bike *n* /baɪk/  
 bookshop *n* /'bʊkʃɒp/  
 bottle *n* /'bɒtl/  
 bread *n* /bred/  
 cereal *n* /'sɛəriəl/  
 chicken *n* /'tʃɪkɪn/  
 chocolate cake *n* /'tʃɒklət ,keɪk/  
 coffee shop *n* /'kɒfi ,ʃɒp/  
 conditioner *n* /kən'dɪʃənə(r)/  
 customers *n pl* /'kʌstəməz/

dawn *n* /dɔ:n/  
 describe *v* /drɪ'skraɪb/  
 dessert *n* /drɪ'zɜ:t/  
 diet *n* /'daɪət/  
 dishes *n pl* /'dɪʃɪz/  
 dollars *n pl* /'dɒləz/  
 dry *adj* /draɪ/  
 feel *v* /fi:l/  
 fish *n* /fɪʃ/  
 floors *n pl* /flɔ:z/  
 follow *v* /tə 'fɒləʊ/  
 followed by /'fɒləʊd baɪ/  
 forget *v* /fə'get/  
 fruit *n* /fru:t/  
 garden *n* /'gɑ:dn/  
 gate *n* /geɪt/  
 hair *n* /heə(r)/  
 immediately *adv* /ɪ'mi:diətli/  
 juice *n* /dʒu:s/  
 just *adv* /dʒʌst/  
 kilometres *n pl* /'kɪləmi:təz/  
 little *adj* /'lɪtl/  
 lunch box *n* /'lʌntʃ ,bɒks/  
 mains *n pl* /meɪnz/  
 marathon *n* /'mærəθən/  
 maybe *adv* /'meɪbi/  
 mayonnaise *n* /,meɪə'neɪz/  
 meat *n* /mi:t/  
 menu *n* /'menju:/  
 mineral water *n* /'mɪnərəl ,wɔ:tə(r)/  
 mixed salad *n* /,mɪkst 'sæləd/  
 mobile phone *n* /,məʊbaɪl 'fəʊn/  
 move into /,mu:v 'ɪntu, ɪntə/  
 nearly *adv* /'niəli/  
 normal *adj* /'nɔ:ml/  
 on the side /,ɒn ðə 'saɪd/  
 onion *n* /,ʌnɪən/  
 ordering *v* /'ɔ:dərɪŋ/  
 perhaps *adv* /pə'hæps/  
 plate *n* /pleɪt/  
 polite *adj* /pə'laɪt/  
 programs *n* /'prəʊgræmz/  
 pull *v* /pʊl/  
 report *v* /rɪ'pɔ:t/  
 rice *n* /raɪs/  
 salmon *n* /'sæmən/  
 service *n* /'sɜ:vɪs/  
 side orders *n pl* /'saɪd ,ɔ:dəz/  
 siesta *n* /si'esta/  
 silly *adj* /'sɪli/  
 Sir *n* /sɜ:/  
 slices *n pl* /'slaɪsɪz/  
 smaller *adj* /'smɔ:lə(r)/  
 smallest *adj* /'smɔ:lɪst/  
 smile *n* /smaɪl/  
 smoke *v* /sməʊk/  
 snack *n* /snæk/  
 soup *n* /su:p/  
 sparkling *adj* /'spɑ:klɪŋ/



stand *v* /stænd/  
 starters *n* /'sta:təz/  
 sugar *n* /'ʃʊgə(r)/  
 sunset *n* /'sʌn, set/  
 swap *v* /swɒp/  
 take photos *v* /,teɪk 'fəʊtəʊz/  
 thirsty *adj* /'θɜ:sti/  
 till *prep* /tɪl/  
 tomato *n* /tə'mɑ:təʊ/  
 too many /,tu: 'meni/  
 too much /,tu: 'mʌtʃ/  
 vegetable *n* /'vedʒtəbl/  
 wait *v* /weɪt/  
 waitress *n* /'weɪtrəs/  
 world *n* /'wɜ:ld/



## UNIT 13

actions *n pl* /'ækʃnz/  
 angry *adj* /'æŋɡri/  
 apartments *n pl* /ə'pɑ:tmənts/  
 arrive *v* /ə'reɪv/  
 at the moment /ət ðə 'məʊmənt/  
 boots *n pl* /bu:ts/  
 bored *adj* /bɔ:d/  
 bring *v* /brɪŋ/  
 build *v* /bɪld/  
 business *n* /'bɪznəs/  
 call *v* /kɔ:l/  
 carry *v* /'kæri/  
 choose *v* /tʃu:s/  
 close *v* /kləʊz/  
 cold /,kəʊld/  
 colours *n pl* /'kɒləz/  
 country house *n* /,kʌntri 'haʊs/  
 do well /,du: 'wel/  
 dress *n* /dres/  
 end *adj* /end/  
 especially *adv* /ɪ'speʃəli/  
 espresso *n* /e'spresəʊ/  
 extra *adj* /'ekstrə/  
 finish *n* /'fɪnɪʃ/  
 guess *v* /ges/  
 happening *n* /'hæpənɪŋ/  
 have a cold *v* /'hæv ə kəʊld/  
 headache *n* /'hedək/  
 helping *n* /'helpɪŋ/  
 homeless *n* /'həʊmləs/  
 hostel *n* /'hɒstəl/  
 hungry *adj* /'hʌŋɡri/  
 jeans *n pl* /dʒi:nz/  
 lose *v* /lu:z/  
 open *v* /'əʊpən/  
 pleased *adj* /pli:zd/  
 poor *adj* /pɔ:(r)/  
 private plane *n* /,praɪvət 'pleɪn/  
 public transport *n* /,pʌblɪk 'trænsɒ:t/

put on *v* /put 'ɒn/  
 remember *v* /rɪ'membə(r)/  
 road *n* /rəʊd/  
 scarf *n* /ska:f/  
 secret *n* /'si:kret/  
 sell *v* /sel/  
 shirt *n* /ʃɜ:t/  
 shorts *n pl* /ʃɔ:ts/  
 skirt *n* /skɜ:t/  
 sleep *v* /sli:p/  
 socks *n pl* /sɒks/  
 someone *pron* /'sʌmwʌn/  
 spend money *v* /,spend 'mʌni/  
 spend time *v* /,spend 'taɪm/  
 strawberry *n* /'strɔ:bəri/  
 successful *adj* /sək'sesfl/  
 suit *n* /su:t/

take off *n* /'teɪk ɒf/  
 teenage *adj* /'ti:neɪdʒ/  
 tie *n* /taɪ/  
 trousers *n pl* /'traʊzəz/  
 turn on *v* /,tɜ:n 'ɒn/  
 turn off *v* /,tɜ:n 'ɒf/  
 TV programme *n* /,ti: 'vi: prəʊɡræm/  
 video *n* /'vɪdiəʊ/  
 wear *v* /'weə/  
 window *n* /'wɪndəʊ/  
 win *v* /wɪn/  
 work *v* /wɜ:k/  
 worried *v* /'wʌrɪd/  
 worth *adj* /wɜ:θ/

### Colours

black *adj* /blæk/  
 blue *adj* /blu:/  
 brown *adj* /braʊn/  
 green *adj* /ɡri:n/  
 grey *adj* /ɡreɪ/  
 red *adj* /red/  
 white *adj* /waɪt/  
 yellow *adj* /'jeləʊ/



## UNIT 14

abroad *v* /ə'brɔ:d/  
 across *adv* /ə'krɒs/  
 all year round /,ɔ:l jɪə 'raʊnd/  
 along *prep* /ə'lɒŋ/  
 assistant *n* /ə'sɪstənt/  
 autoroute *n* /'ɔ:təʊru:t/  
 balcony *n* /'bælkəni/  
 banana *n* /bə'nɑ:nə/  
 begin *v* /bɪ'ɡɪn/  
 Belgium *n* /'beldʒəm/  
 biology *n* /baɪ'ɒlədʒi/  
 bistro *n* /'bi:stəʊ/  
 boat *n* /bəʊt/  
 bridge *n* /brɪdʒ/



campus *n* /'kæmpəs/  
 canals *n pl* /kə'nælz/  
 carefully *adj* /'keəfəli/  
 check in *v* /,tʃek 'in/  
 chef *n* /ʃef/  
 chemistry *n* /'kemistri/  
 connection *n* /kə'nekʃn/  
 cost *n* /kɒst/  
 cruise *n* /kruːz/  
 developing countries *n pl*  
 /dɪ'veləpɪŋ 'kʌntriz/  
 doctors *n pl* /'dɒktəz/  
 east *n* /iːst/  
 economics *n* /,iːkə'nɒmiks/  
 Europe *n* /'jʊərəp/  
 events *n pl* /ɪ'vents/  
 exam *n* /ɪg'zæm/  
 explain *v* /ɪk'spleɪn/  
 expressions *n pl* /ɪk'spreʃnz/  
 flight *n* /flaɪt/  
 future *n* /'fjuːtʃə(r)/  
 grow up /,grəʊ 'ʌp/  
 hope *v* /həʊp/  
 housewife *n* /'haʊswaɪf/  
 how long? *adv* /,haʊ 'lɒŋ/  
 imagine *v* /ɪ'mædʒɪn/  
 important *n* /ɪm'pɔːtənt/  
 jeep *n* /dʒiːp/  
 journalist *n* /'dʒɜːnəlɪst/  
 know *v* /nəʊ/  
 local *adj* /'ləʊkl/  
 medicine *n* /'medsn/  
 modern languages *n pl*  
 /,mɒdn 'læŋgwɪdʒɪz/  
 motorbike *n* /'məʊtəbaɪk/  
 move *v* /muːv/  
 nearby *adj* /'niəbaɪ/  
 nervous *adj* /'nɜːvəs/  
 overnight *adv* /,əʊvə'nart/  
 painter *n* /'peɪntə(r)/  
 Physics *n* /'fɪzɪks/  
 piece of information *n*  
 /,piːs əv ɪnfə'meɪʃn/  
 plans *n pl* /plænz/  
 pleasure *n* /'pleʒə(r)/  
 Psychology *n* /saɪ'kɒlədʒi/  
 quickly *adv* /'kwɪkli/  
 quite often /,kwart 'ɒfn/  
 research company *n*  
 /rɪ'sɜːtʃ ,kʌmpəni/  
 revision *n* /rɪ'vɪʒn/  
 ride *n* /raɪd/  
 rucksack *n* /'rʌksæk/  
 safari *n* /sə'fɑːri/  
 Same to you /,seɪm tu 'juː/  
 Scottish *adj* /'skɒtɪʃ/  
 See you again soon  
 /,siː ju əɡen 'suːn/

South Africa *n* /,saʊθ 'æfrɪkə/  
 souvenir *n* /,suːvə'nɪə(r)/  
 steak *n* /steɪk/  
 sunshine *n* /'sʌnʃaɪn/  
 tent *n* /tent/  
 there *adv* /ðeə(r)/  
 transport *n* /'trænspɔːt/  
 trip *n* /trɪp/  
 tunnel *n* /'tʌnl/  
 women *n pl* /'wɪmɪn/  
 Zambia *n* /'zæmbiə/



# Pairwork pages



UNIT 2 p14

## PRACTICE

### Cities and countries

2 Work with a partner.

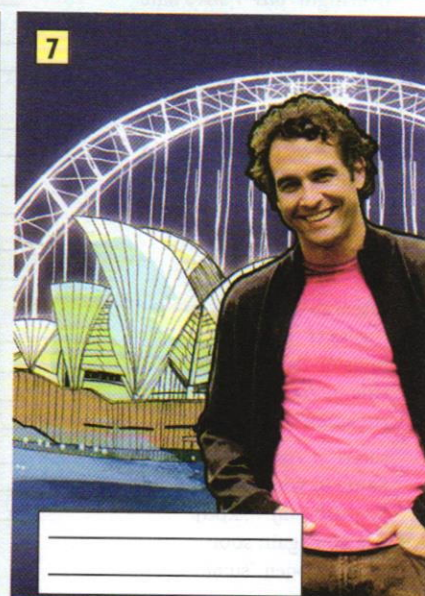
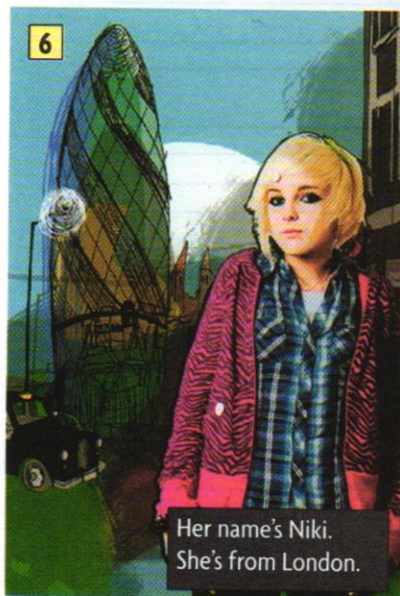
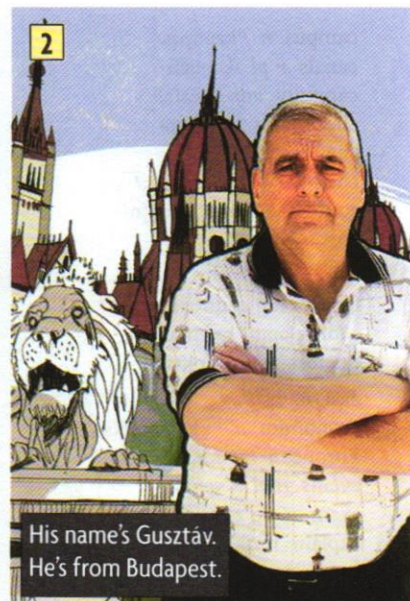
**Student A** Look at the photos on p14.

**Student B** Look at the photos on this page.

Ask questions and write the answers.

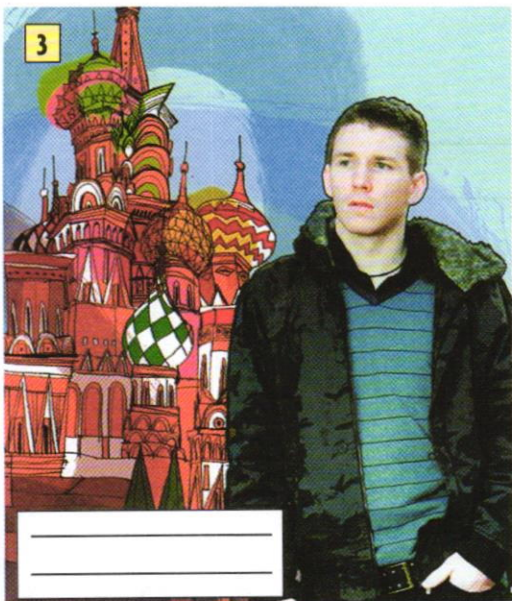
What's her name?  
Where's she from?

What's his name?  
Where's he from?

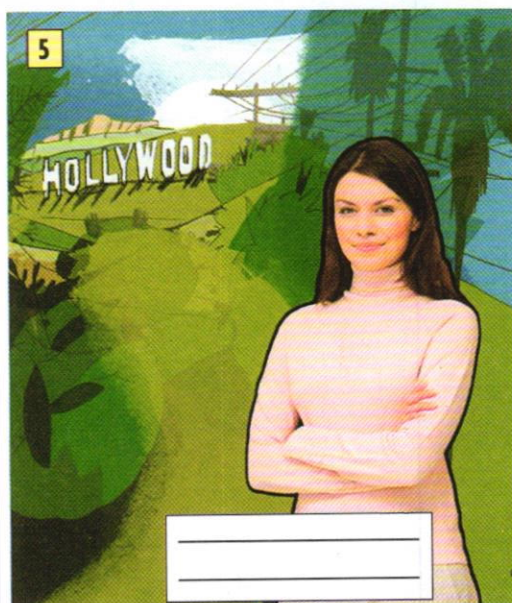




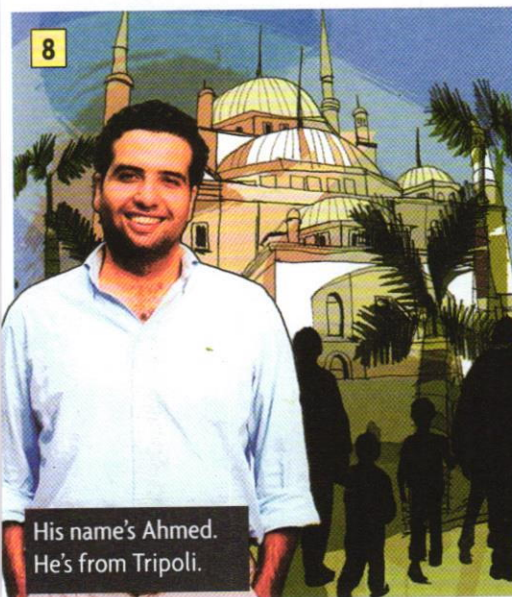
3



5



8



His name's Ahmed.  
He's from Tripoli.



## UNIT 8 p59

### PRACTICE

#### Two different rooms

3 Work with a partner.

Student A Look at the picture on p59.

Student B Look at the picture on this page.



Your pictures are different. Talk about them to find differences.

In my picture, there's a ...

In my picture, there isn't a ...

Is there a ...?

Yes, there is. / No, there isn't.



# Irregular verbs

Base form	Past Simple	Base form	Past Simple
be	was/were	lose	lost
begin	began	make	made
bring	brought	mean	meant
build	built	meet	met
buy	bought	pay	paid
can	could	put	put
catch	caught	read /ri:d/	read /red/
come	came	ride	rode
cost	cost	run	ran
do	did	say	said
draw	drew	see	saw
drink	drank	sell	sold
drive	drove	send	sent
eat	ate	sit	sat
feel	felt	sleep	slept
find	found	speak	spoke
fly	flew	spell	spelt
forget	forgot	spend	spent
get	got	stand	stood
give	gave	swim	swam
go	went	take	took
have	had	teach	taught
hear	heard	think	thought
know	knew	understand	understood
learn	learnt/learned	wear	wore
leave	left	win	win



# Phonetic symbols

## Consonants

1	/p/	as in	<b>pen</b> /pen/
2	/b/	as in	<b>big</b> /bɪg/
3	/t/	as in	<b>tea</b> /ti:/
4	/d/	as in	<b>do</b> /du:/
5	/k/	as in	<b>cat</b> /kæt/
6	/g/	as in	<b>go</b> /gəʊ/
7	/f/	as in	<b>four</b> /fɔ:/
8	/v/	as in	<b>very</b> /'veri/
9	/s/	as in	<b>son</b> /sʌn/
10	/z/	as in	<b>zoo</b> /zu:/
11	/l/	as in	<b>live</b> /lɪv/
12	/m/	as in	<b>my</b> /maɪ/
13	/n/	as in	<b>now</b> /naʊ/
14	/h/	as in	<b>happy</b> /'hæpi/
15	/r/	as in	<b>red</b> /red/
16	/j/	as in	<b>yes</b> /jes/
17	/w/	as in	<b>want</b> /wɒnt/
18	/θ/	as in	<b>thanks</b> /θæŋks/
19	/ð/	as in	<b>the</b> /ðə/
20	/ʃ/	as in	<b>she</b> /ʃi:/
21	/ʒ/	as in	<b>television</b> /'telɪvɪʒn/
22	/tʃ/	as in	<b>child</b> /tʃaɪld/
23	/dʒ/	as in	<b>German</b> /'dʒɜ:mən/
24	/ŋ/	as in	<b>English</b> /'ɪŋɡlɪʃ/

## Vowels

25	/i:/	as in	<b>see</b> /si:/
26	/ɪ/	as in	<b>his</b> /hɪz/
27	/i/	as in	<b>twenty</b> /'twenti/
28	/e/	as in	<b>ten</b> /ten/
29	/æ/	as in	<b>bag</b> /bæg/
30	/ɑ:/	as in	<b>father</b> /'fɑ:ðə/
31	/ɒ/	as in	<b>hot</b> /hɒt/
32	/ɔ:/	as in	<b>morning</b> /'mɔ:nɪŋ/
33	/ʊ/	as in	<b>football</b> /'fʊtbɔ:l/
34	/u:/	as in	<b>you</b> /ju:/
35	/ʌ/	as in	<b>sun</b> /sʌn/
36	/ɜ:/	as in	<b>learn</b> /lɜ:n/
37	/ə/	as in	<b>letter</b> /'letə/

## Diphthongs (two vowels together)

38	/eɪ/	as in	<b>name</b> /neɪm/
39	/əʊ/	as in	<b>no</b> /nəʊ/
40	/aɪ/	as in	<b>my</b> /maɪ/
41	/aʊ/	as in	<b>how</b> /haʊ/
42	/ɔɪ/	as in	<b>boy</b> /bɔɪ/
43	/ɪə/	as in	<b>hear</b> /hɪə/
44	/eə/	as in	<b>where</b> /weə/
45	/ʊə/	as in	<b>tour</b> /tuə/



Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide in Oxford New York

Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam  
Hong Kong Karachi Kuala Lumpur Madrid  
Melbourne Mexico-City Nairobi New Delhi  
Shanghai Taipei Toronto

With offices in  
Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic  
France Greece Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan  
Poland Portugal Singapore South Korea  
Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam

OXFORD and OXFORD ENGLISH are registered  
trade marks of Oxford University Press in the UK  
and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2010

The moral rights of the author have been asserted  
Database right Oxford University Press (maker)

First published 2010

2014 2013 2012 2011 2010  
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

# No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication  
may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system,  
or transmitted, in any form or by any means,  
without the prior permission in writing of  
Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted  
by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate  
reprographics rights organization. Enquiries  
concerning reproduction outside the scope  
of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights  
Department, Oxford University Press, at the  
address above

You must not circulate this book in any other  
binding or cover and you must impose this  
same condition on any acquirer

Any websites referred to in this publication  
are in the public domain and their addresses  
are provided by Oxford University Press for  
information only. Oxford University Press  
disclaims any responsibility for the content.

ISBN: 978 0 19 471375 7

Printed in Spain

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

*Illustrations by:* Thea Brine pp.41, 89; Jonathan Burton  
p.86; Chris Boon p.61 (Canadian flag); Gill Button  
pp.6, 7, 18, 38 (James Bond), 46, 47, 50, 59, 70, 75,  
83, 98 (cooking, driving etc), 102, 103, 110, 126, 141;  
Rowie Christopher Designs p.30; Claire Littlejohn  
pp.63, 79; Joe McLaren pp.11, 95, 104; Patrick Morgan/  
Debutart pp.14-15; Gavin Reece pp.38 (dinner party),  
52, 56, 57, 58, 68-9, 97, 98 (Nigel), 99; Martin Sanders  
p.60 (map); Kath Walker pp.32, 92, 96

*Commissioned photography by:* Gareth Boden pp.6, 7  
(Pablo, Miki, Ben), 8 (all except bl), 9, 12, 13 (bl), 14  
Rosely (middle), pp.15 (Rosely), 20, 22, p.23 male in  
pink shirt & female, 24, 27 Paddy McNab & family,  
34, 35, 50, 54, 55, 72, 73, 80 Oliver, Margaret, 81, 88,  
89, 140 Rosely; Stephen Ogilvy p.42

*The publisher would like to thank the following for their help  
with providing a location:* The Biochemistry Building  
(Café); First Great Western (Oxford Railway Station);  
Four Pillars Hotel (Oxford Spires); Kendall Crescent  
Post Office; lizziejames; The North Wall Arts Centre;  
OUP Private Dining Room; The Oxford English  
Centre; Portabello Restaurant; Rowlands Pharmacy;  
St Barnabas' Primary School; The House; The Town  
Garden, North Parade; The Woodstock Road Deli (The

Oxford Cheese Co.) With special thanks for help with  
location and models to: The Oxford English Centre;  
The Elliot Brown Agency.

*We would also like to thank the following for permission  
to reproduce the following photographs:* Alamy pp.13  
(Karima/Bill Bachmann), 13 (Tatiana/Blaine  
Harrington III), 14 (Chinese woman/Redchopsticks.  
com LLC), 15 (Russian man/Russell Blake), 15 (Libyan  
man/Itani Images), 16 (Empire State building/  
MARKA), 17 (girl with helmet/Wolffy), 17 young boy/  
Ian Shaw), (woman drinking coffee/Alex Segre), 17  
(man playing golf/i love images), 18 (teacher/Gabe  
Palmer), 21 (Tarek/Charles O. Cecil), 22 (mountain/  
Peter McCabe), 23 (old lady/Tony Hobbs), 23 (women  
carrying books/Adrian Sherratt), 25 (hospital/Peter  
Scholey), 26 (couple/Image Source), 29 (older couple/  
Image Source Pink), 32 (football fan/John Simmons),  
33 (American football player/Tetra Images), 36 (street  
scene/Yadid Levy), 37 car/Motoring Picture Library),  
37 (handbag/INSADCO Photography), 37 (coffee/  
Michael Snell), 37 (Perrier/Bon Appétit), 39 (iphone/  
eyewave), 39 (coffee/Paul Bradforth), 40 (watch/Caro),  
40 (ornate railway clock/Iain Masterton), 40 (clear  
alarm clock/studiomode), 40 (clock/Nick David), 44  
(Cape Cod house/Jeff Greenberg), 44 (beach/David  
Norton Photography), 53 (Golden Gate Bridge/  
Arco Images GmbH), 53 (houses/Jon Arnold Images  
Ltd), 57, 58 (man in yellow shirt/Queerstock, Inc.),  
60 (fishermen/Danita Delimont), 60 (trolley bus/  
David Wei), 60 (sky train/Pep Roig), 60 (beach/Chris  
Howes Wild Places Photography), 60 (skiers/Chris  
Cheadle), 62 (skyline/Pep Roig), 62 (couple/Morgan  
Lane Photography), 65 (silhouette of elderly man/  
Caro), 65 (silhouette of parents and child/Kirsty  
Pargeter), 65 (silhouette of mother and children/Yuri  
Maselov), 74 (men eating/Andrew Fox), 76 (formula  
1 car/kolvenbach), (computer game/David J Green),  
76 (girl on horse/John White Photos), 76 (walkers/  
Patrick Eden), 76 (rugby player/Paul Riddsdale), 77  
(Tuscan houses/imagebroker), 77 (couple at airport/  
JupiterImages/Polka Dot), 78 (driving in mountains/  
David Lyons), 85 (Mike/GlowImages), 85 (Lauren/  
Radius Images), 87 (tourists reading map/Richard  
Levine), 87 (office workers/Tetra Images), 87 (buying  
parking ticket/Chris Cooper-Smith), 90 (Jade/B.A.E.  
Inc.), 93 (Caroline/Amana Images Inc.), 93 (Arab male/  
Grapheast), 94 (waiter/JupiterImages/Banana Stock),  
101 (teenage boys/Photofusion Picture Library), 101  
(elderly couple/Paul Baldesare), 103 (couple have tea/  
Peter Bowater), 106 (man with map/Colin Hawkins),  
111 (waving at car/GoGo Images Corporation), 111  
(waving at friends/Radius Images), 140 (Chinese  
woman/Redchopsticks.com LLC), 141 (Russian man/  
Russell Blake), 141 (American woman/i love images),  
141 (Libyan man/Itani Images); Cadmium p.91  
(fishing); Car Photo Library p.100 (Lamborghini);  
Carolyn Contino/BEI/Rex Features p.69 (Teri Horton  
with painting); Chris Boon p.29 (magazines), 37  
(Oxford Dictionary), 40 (iPhone); Corbis UK Ltd. pp.13  
(Yong/Justin Guariglia), 15 (man talking/Colorblind  
Images/Blend Images), 33 (man pulling face/Fancy/  
Veer), 49 (children/M. Dominik/Zefa), 53 (Liberty Bell/  
Tetra Images), 57 (woman on phone/Fancy/Veer),  
60/61 (Coal Harbor Vancouver/Jose Fuste Raga), 66  
(Mozart/The Gallery Collection), 66 (Bruce Lee/Cat's  
Collection), 67 (Van Gogh/The Gallery Collection),  
68 (Jackson Pollock/Rudolph Burckhardt/Sigma),  
76 (soccer player/Randy Faris), 76 (runner/Olix  
Wirtinger), 76 (biking/Jamie Kripke), 76 (tennis/  
Patrik Giardino), 76 (skier/Randy Faris), 76 (ice skater/  
Patrik Giardino), 76 (golf/Richard Schultz), 77 (ski lift/  
Jon Hicks), 80 (architect/Strauss/Curtis), 80 (athlete/  
Russell Glenister/Zefa), 82 (woman horse riding),  
103 (headache/Jack Hollingsworth), 108 (family  
with car/Hans Neleman/Zefa), 108 (woman studying/  
Cultura), 111 (waving from train/Comstock Select);  
Getty Images pp.10 (house/David Oliver/Taxi), 13  
(Kevin/Yellow Dog Productions), 16 (couple with  
umbrella/Comstock), 16 (New York traffic/Panoramic  
Images), 23 (men with map/James Woodson), 26

(Sydney/Travel Ink/Gallo Images), 26 (young girl/  
Jupiter Images/Workbook Stock), 26 (young boy/  
AAGAMIA), 29 (shoes/Paul Viant/Digital Vision), 29  
(young woman jumping/Image Source), 36 (boys  
with surfboard/Hans Neleman), 36 (businessman/  
Matt Henry Gunther), 48 (Paris sketch/Eastnine  
Inc.), 48 (woman/Ryan McVay), 66 (Umm Kalthoum/  
Time & Life Pictures), 74 (sweeping floor/Yellow  
Dog Productions/Lifesize), 74 (shopping bags/David  
Woolley/Lifesize), 74 (homework/Comstock Images/  
Jupiterimages), 80 (pilot/Sascha Schuermann/AFP),  
80 (interpreter/Dominique Faget/AFP), 85 (laptops/  
Ian McKinnell/Photographer's Choice), 87 (packing/  
Leukos/Photographer's Choice RF), 92 (Masumi/  
Antony Nagelmann/Taxi), 92 (dining table from  
above/Tom Schierlitz/The Image Bank), 93 (chicken  
salad/James Baigrie/Riser), 100 (big house/Altrendo  
travel), 100 (man in suit/Matthias Clamer/Stone), 100  
(plane)© 2004 Katsuhiko Tokunaga/Check Six), 105  
(older couple/Olivia Barr/Photonica), 111 (giving gift/  
Comstock Images), 111 (students/Digital Vision);  
iStockphoto pp.10 (home office/Dean Turner), 10  
(burger/Lise Gagne), 16 (central park), 85 (Charlotte),  
90 (Mike), 90 (Kelly/Sheryl Griffin); Library of Congress  
p.64 (Jane Austen); Linographic p.10 (bag); Liz & John  
Soars pp.17 (toddler eating); Martyn F. Chillmaid  
pp.85 (Oliver), 85 (Alan); Nikon p.37 (camera); Oxford  
University Press pp.8 (Anna & Marie), 10 (camera/  
Judith Collins), 13 (Laszlo/Gareth Boden), 13 (Simon/  
Image Source), 14 (English girl/Polka Dot Images),  
19 (Akik Miah, 21 (shop assistant/Chris King), 37  
(oranges), 39 (handbag/Stephen Hawkins), 53 (trolley  
car/Jon Arnold Images), 65 (young woman/Photodisc),  
74 (cinema audience/Image 100), 74 (playing football),  
76 (windsurfer/Photodisc), 78 (sightseeing/Image  
Source), 85 (Lauren/Photodisc), 85 (Mike/Seth Joel/  
White), 87 (couple talking/Chris King), 90 (presents/D.  
Hurst), 93 (kabsa), 111 (broken pot/Richard Lewisohn/  
Image Source), 140 (English girl/Polka Dot Images);  
www.photolibrary.com pp.7 (shaking hands), 13  
(Hayley), 14 (Hungarian man), 14 (Australian man),  
15 (Ashlee/Image Source), 23 (coffee shop/BlueMoon  
Images), 29 (two girls/Sonntag/beyond fotomedia), 29  
(boy & girl/Image Source), 29 (couple at gate/Monkey  
Business Images Ltd/Stockbroker), 33 (brother and  
sister/Jaume Gual), 37 (Moroccan tea/Fabian von  
Poser/Imagebroker.net), 37 (Chicken fajitas/Frank  
Wieder Photography/Fresh Food Images), 44 (Lois/  
Jupiter Images/Polka Dot Images), 44 (chess/Fancy),  
49 (violin/Xavier Subias/age fotostock), 78 (family  
meal/Monkey Business Images Ltd/Stockbroker),  
78 (family meeting/Corbis), 80 (athlete/Masakazu  
Watanabe/Afio Photo Agency), 87 (footballers/Steve  
Hix/Somos Images), 93 (bento box), 107 (train/Claver  
Carroll), 108 (doctors/Image 100), 140 (Hungarian  
Man), 140 (Australian man); Press Association Images  
pp.66 (Shakespeare/PA WIRE), 67 (Benazir Bhutto/  
LANDOV), 67 (Ayrton Senna/Sutton Motorsports); Rex  
Features pp.32 (girl eating ice cream/OJO Images), 66  
(Princess Diana), 80 (farmer on tractor/WestEnd61);  
psd graphics.com p.13 (map); Robert Harding Picture  
Library pp.27 (fishing village, Ireland/Bruno Barbier),  
36 (old people under tree/CuboImages), 36 (grape  
pickers/Upperhall Ltd); Science Photo Library pp.18  
(doctor); Shutterstock pp.10 (television/Michael D  
Brown), 10 (telephone), 23 (asking directions/Factoria  
singular fotografia), 33 (tennis/Junial Enterprises),  
39 (jeans), 76 (swimming/Schmid Christophe), 76  
(fishing/Mikael Damkier), 85 (Edna/Martina Ebel);  
Toyota (GB) PLC p.10 (Toyota Prius); Studio 7 Designs  
p.13; Zooid Pictures pp.10 (book/Ned Coomes), 10  
(photograph/Ned Coomes), 10 (bus/Taryn Cass), 10  
(sandwich/Ned Coomes), 39 (sandwich/Ned Coomes),  
39 (dictionary/Ned Coomes), 39 (chocolate).

Although every effort has been made to contact copyright  
holders before publication, this has not been possible in  
some cases. We apologise for any apparent infringement  
of copyright and if notified, the publisher will be pleased to  
rectify any errors or omissions at the earliest opportunity.